

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- A-chu 阿朮, 928, 931, 932, 938
- A-ku-ta. 阿骨打 *See Wan-yen A-ku-ta*
(Ch'in T'ai-tsung, r. 1115-23)
- A-pao-chi 阿保機 (Liao T'ai-tsung,
916-26), 60, 61, 64, 72, 80
- A-tz'u-han 阿刺罕, 938, 939, 940, 942,
949
- abdication (*shan-jang; nei-ch'an*,
abdicate), 57, 329, 752-754
- Hsiao-tsung's, 754, 757
- Kao-tsung's, 707
- Kuang-tsung's, 754, 771, 772
- absolutism
- defined, 14
 - Hsiao-tsung's, 737-747, 755
 - imperial, 229-233, 237
 - imperial and ministerial, 13-14, 341
 - ministerial, 540
 - Sung mode of, 229
 - T'ai-tsung's, 246-247
- Academy of Worthies (*Chi-hsien yüan*),
361
- Accounting Bureau (*Tu-chih ssu*), 458
- activism (*yu-wei*), 24, 28, 353, 360,
455
- statecraft (*ta yu-wei chih cheng*), 383
- flaws of (*ta yu-wei chih pi*), 420
- student, 897-898
- under Hui-tsung, 906
 - under Li-tsung, 898-899
- acts of grace (*ta-she*), 283
- adjutant (*hsing-chünn ssu-ma*), 154
- administration, financial, Southern
Sung, 33. *See also specific ruler or
administrator*
- Administrative Reform Commission
(*Hsiang-ting kuan-chih so*),
460
- Administrator for Public Order (*ssu-k'ou
ts'an-chün*), 231
- adopted son, nephew, or relative. *See
adoption*
- adoption, 45, 50, 58, 113, 148, 159,
207, 691, 872, 913-915. *See also
heir apparent (*tai-tzu*); "sons,"
imperial (*huang-tzu*)*
- Chao Ch'i's, 912
- Chao Hsün's, 834
- Chao Hung's, 835
- Chao Yen-shou's, 88
- Chao Yüan's, 707
- Chi'in Hsi's, 690
- Chu Yu-jang's, 166
- Chu Yu-wen's, 61
- Hsü Chih-kao's, 161, 166
- Kuo Jung's, 118
- Kuo Wei's, 111
- Li Jung's, 148
- and Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源, 76, 85
- Li Ssu-yüan's, 72
- Li T'an's, 851, 872, 896
- and Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗, 67, 70
- by Li-tsung, 914-915
- Li Ts'ung-k'o's, 85

- adoption (*cont.*)
 Liu Yün's 劉蕡, 111
 Shih Ching-t'ang's, 87
 and the Sung emperors, 835
 Tu-tsung's, 873
 Ying-tsung's, 340, 342
 "advance and fortify" (*chin-chu*) strategy,
 548, 549, 551, 616, 619
 adventurers, outlaw, and southern
 state-building, 5–10. *See also*
 specific actor
 advice, soliciting public, 324–325
 Advisory Office (*Chiang-i ssu*), 589–590,
 593, 597, 600
 affection, fraternal, 842
 agrarian projects, 10. *See also* agricultural
 lands and water conservancy
 policy (*nung-t'ien shui-li fa*);
 agriculture
 Agricultural Colony Offices, 312
 agricultural lands and water conservancy
 policy (*nung-t'ien shui-li fa*), 370,
 379. *See also* agrarian projects
 agriculture, 128, 171–177, 193, 318
 Ai-ti 唐哀帝, 51, 52
 Ai-tsung 金哀宗 (r. 1223–34), 856, 858
 alcohol. *See* wine
 "all-under-Heaven" (*t'ien-hsia*), 99, 243
 allegiance, 5, 11, 39–132. *See also* loyalty
 A-pao-chi's 阿保機 dependence on, 64
 An Ch'ung-jung's 安重榮 dependence
 on, 96 on
 with autonomy, 112
 Chu Wen's 朱溫 dependence on, 48,
 49, 50, 51, 53, 54–55, 58, 62
 Chu Yu-chen's 朱友貞 dependence on,
 66
 Chu Yu-ch'ien's 朱友謙 change of, 65
 gubernatorial, 112
 Kuang-tsung's dependence on, 107
 Kuo Jung's dependence on, 120, 121,
 123
 Kuo Wei's 郭威 dependence on, 109,
 117
 Li Ssu-yüan's 李嗣源 dependence on,
 74–86
 Li Ts'un-hsu's dependence on, 58,
 62–63, 64, 65
 Li Ts'ung-k'o's 李從珂 dependence on,
 84, 89
 Liu Ch'eng-yu's 劉承祐 dependence
 on, 110
 Liu Ch'ung's 劉崇 dependence on, 113
 and military strength, 44, 111, 123
 Shih Ch'ung-kuei's 石重睿 dependence
 on, 102
 significance of, 44
 Southern T'ang dependence on, 104
 and Sun Fang-chien 孫方簡, 101
 and the Sung dynasty, 131
 in the tenth century T'ang empire, 38
 alliances
 through adoption. *See* adoption
 against Chu Wen 朱溫, 146
 "classic," 78
 fraternal, 50
 of Kuan-chung 關中 governors, 108
 Kuo Jung-Wu-Yüeh, 124
 Later Shu-Northern Han-Southern
 T'ang, 124
 Liao-Later Chin (936–42), 87–97
 marriage, 45, 50, 195, 196, 217, 230,
 451, 583
 Chang Yüeh's 張說, 764
 Chao Hsü's 趙頊, 346
 Chao Hung's 趙竑, 835
 Chao K'uo's 趙擴, 773
 Ch'in Kuei's 秦檜, 672
 Chu Wen's 朱溫, 59
 Ch'ung-tsung's, 619
 Empress Liu's, 277
 Han Ch'eng's 韓誠, 762
 Han Ch'ung-yün's 韓重贊, 217
 Han T'o-chou's 韓侂胄, 772, 782
 Huang-fu Yü's 皇甫遇, 95
 Li Chi-ch'ien's 李繼遷, 252
 Li Ch'ung-chü's 李崇矩, 236
 Liu Ch'ien's, 153–154

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1013

- Li Ch'üan's 李全, 824
 Li Ssu-yüan's 李嗣源, 76
 Liu Yen's 劉巖, 183
 Liu Yin's 劉隱, 154
 Lü Chia-wen's 呂嘉聞, 406
 Meng Chih-hsiang's 孟知祥, 165
 Wang Chi-chung's, 266
 Wei Chou's, 154
 Yang Hsing-mi's 楊行密, 50
 Yang Kuang-yüan's 楊光遠, 91
 Yang Miao-chen 楊妙真 and Li Ch'üan's 李全, 824
 northern, 59–60
 Southern T'ang, 189
 Southern T'ang-Liao, 131
 allies. *See* adoption; allegiance; alliances; loyalty; *specific actors, countries, dynasties, or groups*
 amnesty, 100, 116, 126, 228, 318, 528, 579, 580, 937
 An-chi 安吉 (Wu-hsing), 940
An-chi fang 安吉防 (Security and Relief Clinics), 597
 An-chiang 安彊, 548, 551
 An-ch'ing 安慶, 932, 933
 An Ch'ung-hui 安重晦, 76
 An Ch'ung-jung 安重榮, 95–96
an-fu ta-shih 安撫大使. *See* Pacification Commissioner-in-chief
 An-hua county 安化縣, 329
 An-i 安懿. *See* Chao Yün-jang (Prince of P'u, 995–1059)
 An Lu-shan 安祿山, 39
 rebellions (755–63), 38, 43, 134, 607
 An Ping 安丙 (d. 1221), 801, 802, 803, 804–805, 822, 828–829
 An T'ao, 507, 533
 An-te, 331
 An Ts'ung-chin 安從進, 95, 96
 An Tun, 540–541, 542
 An-yan, 307
Analects 論語, 514, 815, 902
 ancestral temples. *See* *specific instances*
 Anhwei modern province, 49, 138
 Annam 安南 (An-nam, Annan, An-nan), 170–171, 247, 468–469
 annual payments and taxes. *See* payments, annual (*sui-pi*)
Anthology of literature (*Wen-hsüan*), 255
 anti-reform. *See* conservatives; factionalism; Hsüan-jen (r. 1085–93); Hui-tsung (1082–1135, r. 1100–26); Ssu-ma Kuang (1019–86); Ts'ai Ching (1047–1126)
 appeasement. *See specific actor*
 archery, 312, 413, 689, 740
 Arigh Böke, 872
 aristocrat. *See* privilege, hereditary (*yin2*)
 armed forces, 190. *See also* archery; army; cavalry (*jen-bsia*); crossbow; horses; infantry; navy; ships
 armor, 117
 army. *See* military
 Army of Eight Characters (*pa-tzu chün*), 663
 “Army of the Wu House,” 798
 aromatics, 186
 asafoetida, 184
 “Ascending the Carriage Canopy Pavilion in Summer,” 522
 assassination, 207, 210, 808–810, 855
 of Chang Ching-ta 張敬達, 88
 of Chia Ssu-tao 賈似道, 936
 of Chu Wen 朱溫, 61, 206
 of Chu Yu-kuei 朱友珪, 61
 of Chung Hsiang, 665
 of Duong Dinh Nghe 楊廷藝, 171
 of Fan Ju-wei 范汝為, 665
 of Han Chen2 韓震, 934, 935
 of Ho-she-li Chih-chung 赫舍哩執中 (d. 1213), 819
 of Khubilai's peace envoys, 939
 of Kuo Ch'ung-t'ao 郭崇韜, 71–72
 of Liu Ch'eng-yu 劉承祐, 110
 of Liu Chien-feng 劉建峰, 150
 of Liu Yün 劉蕡, 112

- assassination (*cont.*)
 of Lo Shih-ch'uan 羅世傳, 832
 of Min Hsü 閔勗, 149
 of Prince Wei 衛紹王, 819
 of Shih Kuei 石珪, 826
 of T'ai-tsü, 242
 of Wang Yen-hsi 王延羲, 168
 assembly, elected (*khuriltai*). *See*
 klaghan
 assignment, duty (*ch'ai-ch'ien*), 233,
 237, 238-240
 astrology. *See* portents, astronomical;
 portents, cosmological
 Attendent Censor (*shib yü-shib*), 540
 attendants
 "close" (*chin-bsi*), 726-728, 744-746
 palace, 726, 727, 760, 944
 authority
 to appoint and dismiss (*yü-tuo chib*
ch'üan), 365
 central, 122
 centralization of military, 668
 imperial, and Hsiao-tsung, 711-712
 ministerial
 curtailed, 721-723
 under Hsiao-tsung, 721
 and tenure, 721
 restoration of central government's,
 653
 autocracy, 31
 from 1127-c.1260, 28-33
 autonomy, 188-189
 gubernatorial, 39-40, 112, 130
 regional, 44, 229
 auxiliaries to the local guards (*chiu-chin*
fu-pao), 408
 Bandit Wang Eight (*Tsei Wang Ba*), 156.
See also Wang Chien
 banditry, 412, 495, 791, 823, 881,
 910-912
 by army deserters, 662
 and the depletion of cattle, 116
 and famine, 100
 along Huai River border, 822
 and Jen-tsung, 325, 326
 under Kao-tsung, 662-666
 and the *pao-chia*, 351, 407, 446
 in rebel provinces, 39
 and "Righteous Armies," 663
 and southern rebels, 664-666
 and Wang Chien and Chin Hui, 156
 and Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 145
 bandits, 104-105, 134-135, 137, 158,
 160, 235, 328, 388, 818
 army, 149
 chieftains. *See* banditry; outlaw
 adventurers. *See also* specific actor
 from the gang of Fang La, 624
 "leader" (*tsei-shuai*), 137, 207
 banishment (*an-chih*), 521-525, 532,
 537-538, 539, 542-543, 566,
 571, 574, 576-577, 639, 889
 of Chang Tun 章惇, 565
 of Chia I 賈易, 543
 of Ch'in Kuan, 543
 of Han Kung 韓, 811
 of Hu Chüan, 680
 of Li Ju-i, 806
 of Lu To-hsün 盧多遜, 259
 of Lü Tsu-chien 呂祖儉, 789
 of Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 536
 of Wang Ta-chieh 王大節, 806
 bankruptcy. *See* debt
 "barbarians," 95, 103, 195, 251-254,
 267, 465, 628
 Barin tribe, 928
 battles. *See* specific location
 Batu, 868
 Bayan 伯顏, 928, 932, 937, 938,
 939-940, 941-944, 945, 947,
 961
 belles lettres, 319
 belvedere (*kuan*), 271
 blacklist, partisan (*tang-chi*), 541, 566,
 575-577, 578, 580. *See also*
 factionalism; proscriptions;
 purges

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1015

- Board of Personnel, 460
 Bureau of Executory Personnel (*Liu-nei ch'üan*), 460
 boats. *See* ships
 bodyguard, personal, 114, 121, 234
 Bol, Peter, 583, 585
 bonds, familial, 49
Book of documents (*Shu-ching*), 286, 294, 689
Book of filial piety (*Hsiao-ching*), 697
Book of poetry (*Shih-ching*), 360, 520
Book of rites (*Li-chi*), 678
 bookkeepers (*tien-li*), 398, 403. *See also* scribes
 books, forbidden. *See* censorship
 border, 343
 Chin reinforcement of Sung, 792
 conflicts, 308
 general, 246–247
 markets, 684
 policies of Hsüan-jen regency, 549
 security, 359, 855–856, 917–923
 situation, ban on discussion of, 890
 trade, 927
 bowmen (*kung-shou*), 425, 427, 437. *See also* conscripts
 bribery, 84, 85, 100, 180–181, 277, 591
 brocade, 256
 brotherhood, sworn, 207, 219
 Buddhism, 612–613, 787
 Indian texts of, 253
 temples and monasteries of (*ssu2, yüan*), 613
Buddhist Canon, 301
 bureau. *See specific entity*
 Bureau for the Interpretation of the Classics (*Ching-i chü*), 364
 Bureau of Astronomy, 581
 Bureau of Military Affairs (*Shu-mi yüan*), 460
 abolished by Shih Ching-t'ang, 92, 99, 313
 and administrative control, 235–237, 239
 and An Ch'ung-hui 安重诲, 76
 and Chen-tsung 宋真宗, 261
 and Ch'ung-cheng Hall 崇政院, 56, 68
 concurrent appointments in the, 722
 and the Council of State, 368
 and Court of Agricultural Supervision (*Ssu-nung ssu*), 413
 by eighth century, 457
 and Feng-chi, 110
 and Hsiao-tsung, 716
 and imperial orders of Hsiao-tsung, 723
 and Jen-tsung, 306
 and Kuo Ch'ung-t'ao 郭崇韜, 69
 and military administration, 218
 and Ministry of War, 461
 and *pao-chia* 保甲, 409
 and the Secretariat-Chancellery, 240, 264, 275, 276
 after Shan-yüan 潼淵, 21
 and T'ai-tsui, 12, 241, 246, 250
 and T'ai-tsung, 246
 Bureau of Monopoly Goods (*Ch'üeh-buo wu*), 405, 430
 Bureau of Personnel Evaluation (*Shen-kuan yüan*), 240, 352, 460
 Bureau of State Expenditure (*Kuo-yung fang*), 730
 bureaucracy, 55–58, 115, 122, 190–191, 254, 290, 345–346, 360. *See also* specific agency, bureau, commission, kingdom, office, reign
 difference between the 1250's Northern and Southern Sung, 908
 after the Shan-yüan settlement, 20–21
 two administrative systems of the Sung, 457–459
 burial. *See specific actor or location*
 cadastral survey. *See* survey, cadastral
 caitiff, 268. *See also* “barbarians”

- Calamity of Ching-k'ang (*ching-k'ang chih-nan*), 559, 607, 642, 646
- calendar, 188, 227
- A-pao-chi's 阿保機, 64
 - Kuo Jung's 郭榮, 126
 - Li Ching's 李璟, 127
 - Li Ssu-yüan's 李嗣源, 75
 - T'ang dynasty's, 59
 - Wang Chien's 王建, 55
- calligraphy, 254, 283, 287, 575, 689
- Cambridge History of China. Volume 6: Alien regimes and border states, 907-1368*, 1
- camphor, 184
- canal. *See specific entity. See also waterways*
- cannibalism, 855, 858, 881, 902. *See also famine*
- canton (*hsiang*), 407
- Canton 廣州 (Kuang-chou), xi
- canton scribe (*hsiang shu-shou*), 397
- capital, 106, 155. *See also specific location*
- and Kao-tsung, 661-662, 696-697
 - location of, 933, 934, 958
 - temporary (*hsing-tsai*), 661, 662
- Capital Security Office (*Huang-ch'eng ssu*), 219, 234
- sustenance (*hsin-ts'ai ch'ien*), 410
- catchment basins. *See dikes (yen). See also specific waterway.*
- catties, 179
- cattle, 116, 684
- cavalry, 195, 218, 253, 308, 477, 819, 920. *See also horses*
- Celestial Heart (*T'ien-hsin*), 611
- censor (*yü-shib*), 21, 30, 32, 288, 567
- Censorate (*Yü-shib t'ai*), 25, 274, 373-376, 490, 513, 747. *See also Census Bureau (Hu-pu ssu)*
- censorship, 277, 692
- Census Bureau (*Hu-pu ssu*), 261, 458
- Central Collateralized Loan Bureau (*Ti-tang so*), 430, 432-433
- Central Commercial Tax Bureau (*Tu shang-shui yüan*), 430
- central government. *See centralization*
- "Central Kingdom," 181
- Central Plains (*chung-yüan*), 4, 30, 53, 104, 106, 714
- Liao invasion of (1004), 20
- Liao occupation of (947), 102-103
- revolts across, 105
- centralization, ceramics, 176-177, 184
- certificate of verification (*t'ieh-she*), 284
- cha-tzu* 劄子 (memoranda), 246
- ch'a-fang shih* 察訪使. *See commissioners, investigative*
- Ch'a-ko 察哥, Hsi Hsia prince, 621
- Ch'a-p'u* 茶譜. *See Monograph on tea*
- ch'a-yin* 茶引 (tea certificates), 594
- Chaffee, John W., 585, 597, 602
- Chai Hsing 翟興 (1073-1133), 664
- Chai Ssu, 535
- Chai Ts'ung 翟琮, 664
- ch'ai-ch'ien* 差遣. *See duty assignment*
- ch'ai-i* 差役. *See drafted service*
- ch'ai-i fa* 差役法. *See Drafted Service policy*
- Ch'ai Jung 柴榮 (Chou Shih-tsung, r. 954-59), 5, 11, 197, 208-211, 220, 244. *See also Kuo Jung*
- contributions of, in strengthening bureaucratic governance, 11
- recentralization of military authority by, 5
- Chancellery (*Men-hsia sheng*), 462, 652
- imperial recorder of, 724
- Chang, Lady (Wen-ch'eng Empress), 292, 335
- Chang An-kuo 張安國, 376
- Chang Ch'eng-yeh 張承業, 66
- Chang Chi 張及, 282, 290
- Chang Chieh 章彊, 549
- Chang Chieh2 張戒, 670
- Chang Chien 張戩, 374, 375
- Chang Chien2 章鑑, 931, 935
- Chang Chih-pai 張知白 (?-1028), 277
- Chang Chih-po 張知白 (?-1028), 281

GLOSSARY–INDEX

1017

- Chang Ching-ta 張敬達, 86, 88
 Chang-chou 漳州, 133, 151, 169, 910
 Chang Ch'u-wei, 690
 Chang-Ch'üan 長泉, 14, 133, 204, 220,
 223, 228, 248
 Chang Chüeh 張穀, 633, 634
 Chang Chiün 張浚 (1097–1164), 651,
 659–660, 670, 671, 680, 682,
 703, 713, 714, 715, 716–717,
 718–719, 899
 Chang Chün2 張俊 (1086–1154), xi,
 651, 669
 Chang Fang-p'ing 張方平 (1007–91),
 299, 313, 323, 345, 346, 387
 on deflation, 441
 on hired-service, 421
 and prefecture schools, 318
 and service-exemption fees, 439
 and Shen-tsung, 355
 on Ying-t'ien-fu, 421, 438
 Chang Fu 張福 (d. 1219), 832
 Chang Hsüan, 183
 Chang Hung-fan 張弘範 (d. 1280),
 955–956
 Chang Jung 張榮, 664
 Chang K'o-kung, 581
 Chang Kuan 張觀, 294, 299, 300, 307
 Chang Lin 長琳, 172
 Chang Lin2 張林, 826, 830, 850
 Chang Ling-to 張令鐸, 217
 Chang Mu 張睦, 185
 Chang Pang-ch'ang 張邦昌 (1081–1127),
 637, 638, 639, 640, 643, 645,
 646–647, 649
 Chang P'u 張溥, 754
 Chang Shang-ying (1043–1122), 535,
 538, 582, 598
 Chang Shao (1096–1156), 687
 Chang Sheng 張昇, 323, 337
 Chang Shih 張拭 (1133–80), 728
 Chang Shih2 張時, 899
 Chang Shih-chieh 張世傑 (d. 1279), 922,
 934, 937, 941, 947, 948, 949,
 950, 952, 955, 956, 957
 Chang Shih-hsün 張士遜 (964–1049),
 281, 284, 285, 290, 291–292,
 300, 928
 Chang Shu-yeh 張叔夜, 627
 Chang Shun-min 張舜民, 517–518
 Chang So, 648, 649
 Chang T'ang-ying 張唐英 (1029–71),
 156
 Chang T'ao 張撝, 681
 Chang Te-hsiang 章得象, 300, 313, 318
 Chang T'ien-i 張天翼, 830
 Chang Tsai 張載, 374, 877, 902
 Chang-tsung 金章宗 (r. 1189–1208), 792
 Chang Tun 章惇 (1094–1100), 26, 30,
 453, 478, 481, 491, 521, 528
 and the abolition of the Yüan-feng
 reforms, 544
 “advance and fortify” strategy of,
 548–549
 and censorial post nominees, 493–494
 and crimes against the state, 565
 and elimination of New Policies, 496
 and the hired service exemption,
 501–502
 and Hui-tsung, 565
 and Lü Ta-fang 呂大防, 538
 opposition to amnesty for Lü Ta-fang
 呂大防, 539
 plot to depose Chao Hsü2 趙煦, 486
 and Prince of Chien, 553–554
 stripped of honorary rank, 566
 and Su Ch'e 蘇軾, 499
 supporting Chao Ssu 趙似, 562–566
 and Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 577
 and Tseng Pu, 553
 Chang Tzu-yen 張子顏, 739
 Chang Wan-chin 張萬進, 60, 64
 Chang Wen Piao, 224
 Chang Yao-tso 張堯佐, 335
 Chang Yen 張巖, 793, 806
 Chang Yen-lang 張延朗, 77, 84
 Chang Yen-te (927–1000), 102, 210
 Chang Yung 張詠 (946–1015), 272
 Chang Yü, 297

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

1018

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Chang Yüan-te 張源德, 62
- Chang Yüeh 張說 (d. 1180), 727–728,
764, 765
- ch'ang* 場. *See* tax stations
- Ch'ang-an 長安
- and the An Lu-shan 安祿山 rebellion, 38
 - assaulted by Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 146
 - and Chao-tsung 唐昭宗, 47, 48
 - and Chu Wen 朱溫, 43, 47, 48
 - as cultural center, 134
 - demoted to a province, 52
 - by 895, 42–43
 - Garrison, 940
 - and Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 39, 42, 66
 - under Liu Ch'eng-yu 劉承祐, 107
 - and the rebellion of Wang Hsien-chih
 - and Huang Ch'ao, 138
 - as T'ang capital, 207, 222
- Ch'ang An-min, 539
- Ch'ang-chih 長治, 47
- Ch'ang-chou 常州, 140, 933, 937, 938,
940
- ch'ang chün-tzu, hsiao hsiao-jen*
長君子消小人 (“strengthening the
superior men and illuminating
the petty ones”), 363
- Ch'ang Mao 常楙 (d. 1282), 940
- ch'ang-ming ya-ch'ien* 長名衙前. *See* supply
masters, volunteer
- Ch'ang-p'ing shih-i ssu* 常平市易司. *See*
Ever-normal state trade agency
- Ch'ang-p'ing ts'ang* 常平倉. *See*
Ever-normal Granaries
- Ch'ang-sha 長沙, 148
- Ch'ang-sheng kuo, 331
- Ch'ang-sheng ta-ti*. *See* Great Emperor of
Everlasting Life
- Chao 趙, 65
- Chao An-jen 趙安仁 (958–1018), 276
- Chao Chan 趙瞻, 341–343
- Chao Chen 趙楨 (Jen-tsung, 1010–63,
r. 1022–63), 279. *See also*
Jen-tsung
- Chao Chen2 趙楨, 290
- Chao Chi 趙佶 (Hui-tsung, 1082–1135,
r. 1100–26), 553, 562. *See also*
Hui-tsung; T'ai-tsung
- Chao Ch'i 趙祺 (Tu-tsung, 1240–74,
r. 1264–74), 912, 914, 916. *See*
also Tu-tsung
- Chao-chou 趙州, 59, 60
- Chao Chung-chen 趙仲誠 (Chao Hsü,
1048–85), 338. *See also* P'u,
Prince of; Sung Shen-tsung
- Chao Fan 趙范, 848, 850, 882
- Chao Fang 趙方 (d. 1221), 805, 823,
827, 828, 848, 860
- Chao Fu, 653
- Chao Hao 趙灝, 486
- Chao Heng 趙恆 (Chen-tsung,
968–1022, r. 997–1022), 259.
See also Chen-tsung
(r. 977–1022); Chen-tsung
(r. 997–1022)
- Chao Hsieh 趙嵩, 477
- Chao Hsien 趙縣 (Ying-kuo kung,
Kung-ti, Kung-tsung,
1271–1323, r. 1274–76), 928,
929–930, 945
- Chao Hsiung 趙雄, 736
- Chao Hsü 趙頊 (Chao Chung-chen,
Shen-tsung, 1064–85,
r. 1067–85), 346, 347, 351. *See*
also Chao Chung-chen;
Shen-tsung
- Chao Hsü2 趙煦 (Che-tsung,
1077–1100, r. 1085–1100),
480, 486. *See also* Che-tsung
(Chao Hsü2, 1077–1100,
r. 1085–1100)
plot to depose, 486
- Chao Hsün 趙詢 (1192–1220), 809, 811,
813, 834–835
- Chao Huan 趙環 (Ch'in-tsung, 1100–61,
r. 1126–27), 637. *See also*
Ch'in-tsung (1100–61,
r. 1126–27))

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1019

- Chao Hung 趙竑 (d. 1225), 834-835, 836, 839-844, 861, 875, 876, 915
 Chao Hung-yin 趙弘殷, 210
 Chao Ju-yü 趙汝愚 (1140-96), 32, 761, 764-766, 768, 770, 773, 775-782, 783, 787, 788, 793, 814, 877, 897, 914-915
 and the accession of Ning-tsung, 774
 calls for dismissal of, 781
 and filial obligations, 770
 and Kuang-tsung's abdication, 771-772
 P'eng Kuei-nien 彭龜年 (1142-1206), 798
 reinstated, 790
 and *Tao-hsiieh*, 781
 Chao Kai 趙槩, 323, 337, 345, 346
 Chao K'ai2 趙愷 (1146-80), 758
 Chao Kou 趙構 (Kao-tsung, 1107-87, r. 1127-62), 641, 643, 644, 645, 647. *See also* Kao-tsung
 (Chao Kou, 1107-87, r. 1127-62)
 Chao K'uang-i 趙匡義 (T'ai-tsung, 939-97, r. 977-97), 11, 131-132, 212, 228. *See also* T'ai-tsung
 Chao K'uang-ning 趙匡寧, 50-51
 Chao K'uang-tsan 趙匡贊, 107
 Chao K'uang-yin 趙匡胤 (T'ai-tsung, 927-76, r. 960-76), 1, 5, 11-12, 126, 131, 132, 197, 201, 210-213, 457. *See also* T'ai-tsung
 Chao K'uei 趙葵 (1186-1266), 848, 850, 860-861, 862, 882, 891, 904
 Chao Kuo. *See* K'ang, Prince
 Chao K'uo 趙擴 (Ning-tsung, 1168-1224, r. 1194-1224), 762, 771, 773. *See also* Chia, Prince
 Chao Li 趙立, 659
 Chao Liang-ssu 趙良嗣, 628, 629. *See also* Ma Chih
 Chao-ming, Prince. *See* Hsiao T'ung
 Chao Pi 趙弼 (Prince of Shen), 562
 Chao Pien 趙抃, 369, 372, 374
 Chao Ping 趙昺 (Ti-ping, 1272-79, r. 1278-79), 929, 946, 952, 956
 Chao Po-chiu 趙伯玖, 708
 Chao Po-ts'ung 趙伯宗 (Prince of P'u-an, Hsiao-tsung, 1127-94, r. 1162-), 708-709. *See also* Chao Shen (Hsiao-tsung, 1127-94, r. 1162-69); Chao Yüan; Hsiao-tsung (1127-94, r. 1162-89)
 Chao Pu-ti 趙不敵, 730
 Chao P'u 趙普 (924-92), 220-221, 229, 236, 243-244, 245, 254, 258
 Chao Shan-hsiang 趙善湘, 860
 Chao Shen 趙慎 (Hsiao-tsung, 1127-94, r. 1162-69). *See* Hsiao-tsung (1127-94, r. 1162-89)
 Chao Shih 趙是 (Tuan-tsung, c. 1268-78, r. 1276-78), 929-930, 946, 948. *See also* Tuan-tsung
 Chao Shu 趙曙 (Ying-tsung, 1032-67, r. 1063-67), 351. *See also* Ying-tsung (1032-67, r. 1063-67)
 Chao Ssu 趙似, Prince of Chien, 562
 Chao Te-chao 趙德昭 (950-79), 242, 245, 914
 Chao Te-chün 趙德鈞, 85, 88, 98
 Chao Te-fang 趙德芳 (959-81), 242, 914
 Chao Ting (1085-1147), 674, 675-676, 677, 680, 693, 703
 Chao Ting2, 341
 Chao T'ing-chih 趙挺之, 520, 579, 580
 Chao T'ing-mei 趙廷美 (947-84), 257-259
 Chao Tsai-li 趙在禮, 72
 Chao Tsung-shih 趙宗實 (Ying-tsung, r. 1063-67), 335-346. *See also* Ying-tsung

- Chao Ts'ung-ku, 336
- Chao Tun 趙盾 (*Kuang-tsung*, 1147–1200, r. 1189–94), 753, 756–758, 765
- Chao Tzu-chi 趙子幾, 408
- Chao Yen-jo 趙彥若, 539
- Chao Yen-na 趙彥若, 879
- Chao Yen-shou 趙延壽, 88, 98, 101–102, 103
- Chao Yü-jui 趙與芮, 936, 945
- chao-yü shib*. *See* envoy, investiture
- Chao Yüan 趙瑗. *See also* Chao Po-ts'ung; Hsiao-tsung (1127–94, r. 1162–89)
- Chao Yüan-fen 趙元份, 297, 336
- Chao Yüan-tso, 764
- Chao Yüan-yen 趙元嚴 (Prince of Ching), 289
- Chao Yün 趙昀 (*Li-tsung*, 1205–64, r. 1224–64), 836–837
- Chao Yün-jang 趙允讓 (Prince of P'u, 995–1059), 297, 335, 336
- Chao Yün-pi, 336
- ch'ao-t'ing* 朝廷. *See* court
- Che-hsi 浙西 (*T'ang* province), 143
- Che-tsung 哲宗 (Chao Hsü2, 1077–1100, r. 1085–1100), 25–553, 560, 928
- political culture of, 535
- reformist takeover of 1094, under, 533
- Che-tung (*T'ang* province, modern Chekiang), 136
- Chekiang 浙江, 177
- chen*. *See* constellation
- Chen-chiang 鎮江, 933
- Chen-chou 鎮州, 44, 47, 59, 65, 66, 102, 106, 211
- Chen-chou2 真州, 865, 938, 949
- chen-fu shib* 鎮撫使. *See* commissioners, military
- Chen-jung chün 鎮戎軍, 308
- Chen Te-hsiu 真德秀 (1178–1235), 34, 812, 816–817, 820, 825, 835, 837, 842, 843, 852, 854, 876, 898, 901
- Chen-ting, 636
- Chen-ting fu 真定府, 310, 641
- Chen-tsung 宋真宗 (Chao Heng, 968–1022, r. 997–1022), 31, 279, 285, 291, 609. *See also* Chao Heng (Chen-tsung, 968–1022, r. 997–1022) tomb of, 280–281
- Ch'en Tz'u-sheng 陳次升, 567
- Chen-wu 震武, 621, 622
- ch'en* 臣. *See* subject
- Ch'en, Lady, 293
- Ch'en Ch'ao-lao, 581
- Ch'en-ch'iao 陳橋, 210–213, 244
- Ch'en Chien 陳薦, 375
- Ch'en Chih-chung 陳執中, 300, 307
- Ch'en Ching-hsüan 陳敬瑄, 155
- Ch'en Chiu (Ch'en Sheng-chih), 323, 344. *See also* Ch'en Sheng-chih
- Ch'en Chün-ch'ing 陳俊卿 (1113–86), 723, 725, 726–727, 728, 735
- Ch'en Embankment, 173
- Ch'en Fu-liang 陳傅良 (1137–1203), 429, 770, 777, 780, 788, 790
- Ch'en Hsiang 陳襄, 372
- Ch'en Hsün 陳墳, 848
- Ch'en Hua, 883, 910–911
- Ch'en Hung-chin 陳洪進 (914–85, r. 964–78), 173, 205, 228
- Ch'en I-chung 陳宜中, 905, 924, 926, 930–931, 934, 935–937, 940, 941, 946, 948–949, 957
- Ch'en K'ang-po 陳康伯 (1097–1165), 715, 716
- Ch'en Kuan 陳瓘 (1057–1122), 554, 564, 616
- Ch'en Kuei-i 陳貴誼 (1183–1234), 859
- Ch'en K'uei 陳騤 (1128–1203), 781
- Ch'en Liang 陳亮, 899
- Ch'en Liang-yu 陳良祐, 730, 734

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1021

- Ch'en P'eng-nien 陳彭年 (961–1017), 272, 274, 275
Ch'en san-ch'iang 陳三槍. *See* "Three-Spear" Ch'en
Ch'en She 陳涉, 743
Ch'en Sheng-chih 陳升之, 370, 371, 372, 374, 447. *See* Ch'en Chiu
Ch'en Shu 陳曙, 332, 333
Ch'en Ssu-kung, 655
Ch'en Tung 陳東, 638, 645, 649, 651
Ch'en Tzu-ch'iang 陳自蔣, 782, 811
Ch'en Wen-lung 陳文龍 (1232–77), 925, 940, 948, 949, 950, 958
Ch'en Yao-tso 陳堯佐, 290, 298, 299–300
Ch'en Yen 陳巖, 150, 151
Ch'en Yen-hsiao 陳巖肖, 722
Ch'en Yu'an 陳原, 760–761, 765
Cheng Ch'ing-chih 鄭清之 (1176–1251), 836, 850, 854, 858–859, 876, 877, 878, 884, 898, 901, 904
greatest shortcoming of, 885–886, 910
successors, 886
Cheng Chü-cheng, 580, 582
Cheng-ho (1111–18), 583
Cheng-bo wan-shou Tao-tsang. *See* Taoist canon of the longevity of the Cheng-ho Reign
Cheng Hsia 鄭恢 (1040–1119), 387, 435, 444, 448–449, 450
Cheng I-nien 鄭億年, 681, 690
Cheng Jen-hui 鄭仁晦, 122
cheng kuan-ming 正官名. *See* titles, rectification of office
Cheng Ts'ai 鄭槩 (d. 1249), 885
Cheng Yung, 528–529
Cheng Yu'an-pi 鄭元弼, 179–180
Ch'eng brothers 程兄弟, 902. *See also* Ch'eng Hao; Ch'eng I
Ch'eng Chien 程顥, 830
Ch'eng-chou 成州 (T'ung-ku), 660
Ch'eng Fang 程昉, 366, 393
ch'eng-fu 承符. *See* messengers, office
Ch'eng Hao 程顥, 379, 454, 479, 481, 487, 877. *See also* Ch'eng brothers
ch'eng-bsiang 丞相. *See* counselor, chief
Ch'eng I 程頤 (1033–1107), 510–511, 512–513, 518, 519–520, 521, 530, 575, 693, 877. *See also* Ch'eng brothers
banishment of, 543
on the factionalism of the Hsüan-jen regency, 530
as imperial tutor, 516
rehabilitation of, 564
and Su Shih 蘇軾, 514
Ch'eng Ju 成汝, 147–148
Ch'eng K'an 程戡, 299
Ch'eng Kuang-hsü 程公訏, 904
Ch'eng Lin 程琳 (988–1056), 285–289
Ch'eng-p'ing-chai, 305
Ch'eng Sung 程松, 793, 794, 799–800, 801–802
Ch'eng-te 成德, 44
ch'eng-i'ieh jen 承帖人. *See* messenger
Ch'eng-tu 成都, 72, 134, 157, 195, 223, 798, 869, 920, 953
Ch'eng Yu'an-feng 程元鳳, 889–890, 892
Chi-chih ssu 計置司 (*ad hoc* agency to audit and adjust spending), 284
Chi-chou 蕺州, 87, 632
Chi-chou2 冽州, 122
Chi-chou3 吉州, 925
Chi Feng 汲逢, 444
Chi Hsien 季先 (d. 1220), 826, 827
chi-lu kuan 寄祿官. *See* offices, stipendiary
chi-shib-chung 紿事中. *See* Supervising Secretary
Chi-su fang 機連房. *See* Office for Emergencies
chi-t'ien mu-ma 紿田牧馬. *See* horses, land in return for
ch'i 氣 (life force), 844
Chi'i 齊 (proxy state, 1130–37), 29, 708

- Ch'i-chou 齊州, 627
 Ch'i-chou2 蕭州, 928, 933
ch'i-chang 耆長. *See* elder
Ch'i-chü chü 起居注. *See* Court Diary of Activity and Repose
 Ch'i Fang 戚方, 727
 Ch'i-kou Pass 歧溝關, 250
 Ch'i-li era (Annunciatory Calendar), 331
Ch'i-tan 契丹. *See* Khitan
 Ch'i-ying, 182
 Chia, Consort (d. 1247), 874, 891, 892, 913–914, 930
 Chia, Prince, 759, 760, 767. *See also* Chao K'uo (Ning-tsung, r. 1194–1224)
 and Hsiao-tsung, 768
 and Kuang-tsung, 768
 Chia Ch'ang-ch'ao 賈昌朝, 294, 318, 323
 and Shih Chieh 石介, 321
chia-fa 家法. *See* household regulations
 Chia-hsing 嘉興, 940
 Chia I 賈易, 510–511, 515, 518, 519
 Chia-lu 蔣蘆, 548, 551
 Chia She 賈涉 (d. 1223), 825, 826, 847–848, 874, 891, 896
 Chia Ssu-tao 賈似道 (1213–75, 1259–75), 26, 31, 33, 890–892, 905, 912, 915
 and foreign policy, 895
 lack of good judgment by, 926–927
chia-tou 甲頭. *See* tax-pressing
 Chia Yü-ch'ing 賈餘慶 (d. 1276), 941
chiang. *See* military, mixed battalion
 Chiang-chou 江州, 932, 933
 Chiang Fei 將芾, 724
 Chiang Hsüan-hui 蔣玄暉, 51
 Chiang-Huai 江淮, 4, 133, 143, 160, 163, 165–167, 200
Chiang-i ssu 講議司. *See* Advisory Office
 Chiang-ling 江陵, 147, 196
 Chiang-ling fu, 10
 Chiang-nan, 28, 144, 152
 East, 624, 626
 Chiang-ning 江寧 (Nanking), 652. *See also* Chien-k'ang; Chin-ling; Nanking
 Chiang-ning fu (Nanking), 358
 Chiang-pei 江北, 123
 Chiang T'e-li 姜特立, 763, 764, 768–769
 Chiang-tung 江東, 178
 Chiang Wan-li 江萬里 (1188–1275), 923
 Chiang-yin 江陰, 939
ch'iang-kan jo-chib 強幹弱枝. *See* strengthening the tree trunk and weakening the branches
Chiao-chib 交趾, 468. *See also* Ly dynasty
Chiao-fang 教坊. *See* Imperial Bureau of Music
 Chiao-shan, 937, 939
chiao-t'ou 教頭 (drill chiefs), 413
chiao-yin 交引. *See* vouchers, exchange
chiao-yüeh 教閱. *See* military drill and review
 Chiao Hsing-chien 喬行簡 (1156–1241), 821, 843, 848, 859, 877, 880
 chief
 drill (*chiao-t'ou*), 413
 household (*bu-ma*), 397, 427
 small guard (*pao-chang*), 408
 Chief Deployment Commands (*tu-pu shu*), 247
 Chief Office of Imperial Clan Affairs (*Ta tsung-cheng ssu*), 297
 chieftain, hereditary, 153
 Chieh-chou 單州, 660, 853
chieh-kuan 階官. *See* titles, prestige
chieh-tu shih 節度使. *See* governors, military
 Chien, Prince of, 553. *See also* Chao Ssu
chien-ch'a yü-shih 監察御史. *See* Investigating Censor
chien-ch'en 売臣. *See* “treacherous minister”
chien-cheng chung-shu wu-fang kung-shih 檢正中書五房公事. *See* Secretariat examiners
 Chien-chou 建州. *See* Chien-ning

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1023

- Chien-chou 建州, 10–11, 168, 169
 Chien-chou2 簡州, 803
Chien-chung ching-kuo 建中靖國. *See*
 Establishing Centrality and
 Balancing the State, 1101–02
chien-i ta-fu 諫議大夫. *See* remonstrance,
 grand master of
 Chien-k'ang 建康 (Nan-ching), 652,
 696, 933, 938. *See also*
 Chiang-ning (Nanking);
 Nanking
chien-kuan 諫官. *See* critics, policy
chien-kuo 監國. *See* regent
 Chien-men Pass 劍門關, 226
 Chien-ning 建寧. *See* Chien-chou
chien pang-chia 建邦家. *See* state
chien-pi ch'ing yeb 堅壁清野. *See*
 “strengthening the walls and
 clearing out the countryside”
chien-ping 兼并. *See* “engrossers”
chien-ping chib chia 兼并之家. *See*
 “monopolists”
chien-ssu 監司. *See* intendants, circuit
 Chien-yen (1127–31), 652
Chien-yüan 諫院. *See* Remonstrance
 Bureau
 Ch'ien-chou, 147, 178. *See also* Kan-chou
 Ch'ien Ch'u 錢俶 (r. 947–78), 228
ch'ien-chung buo-ch'ing 錢重貨輕. *See*
 “money became dear and goods
 cheap”
ch'ien-hsia 鈴幃. *See* commander, zone
 Ch'ien Hsiang-tsu 錢象祖, 808, 811,
 812, 813, 814, 816
ch'ien-huang 錢荒. *See* famine, cash
 Ch'ien Hung-tsou 錢弘佐, 169
 Ch'ien I 錢顥, 374
 Ch'ien Liu 錢鏗 (r. 907–31)
 illegal behavior of, 145
 and the Khitan court, 185
 as King of Wu-Yanü, 157
 as King of Yüeh, 157
 loyalty of, to T'ang, 188
 reign period of, 188
 tribute to, 179
 and Tung Ch'ang 董昌, 140–143
 and Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 146
 and Yüeh-chou 越州, 142
 Ch'ien Neng 阡能, 155
 Ch'ien Shu 錢 (r. 948–78), 182, 186,
 205
 Ch'ien-tao 乾道 era (Supernal Way,
 1165–74), 712, 720–737
 Ch'ien Wei-yen 錢惟演 (962–1034), 277
 Ch'ien Yü 錢遹, 571
chib-chiang fa 置將法. *See* local defense,
 training command system
 Chih-chien, 153
chib-chih-kao 知制誥. *See* officials, drafting
Chib-chih san-ssu t'iao-li ssu
 制置三司條例司. *See* Finance
 Planning Commission
chib chiün-fu shih 知軍府事. *See* Military
 and Civil Affairs, Director of
chib-hui 指揮. *See* military command
 Chih-k'ao, 166
chib kuo-yung shih 制國用使. *See* controller
 of national finance
 Chih-p'ing 治平 (Ordered Tranquility,
 1064–68), 338
chib shu-mi yüan shih 知樞密院事. *See*
 Bureau of Military Affairs,
 administrator of
chib-ta wang 直達綱. *See* grain, direct
 networking
chib-ts'ai 治財. *See* finance, public
 Ch'ih-chou 池州, 939
chib-hsin pao-kuo, shib-sha Chin tsei
 赤心報國, 誓殺金賊. *See* “Serve the
 country with passion; swear to
 kill the Chin bandits”
 Child Benevolence Service (*Tz'u-yu chü*
 慈幼局), 872
 Chin (1115–1234), 16–17, 29, 33,
 34–35, 250, 615, 622, 818
 invasion on the Khitan frontier,
 27–30
 rebellion, 628–643

- Chin, Prince of, 43
 Chin-an-chai 晉安寨, 88
 Chin-cheng pass, 551
 Chin-chou 晉州, 113
chin-chu 進筑. *See* advance and fortify
chin-chün 禁軍. *See* army, imperial
 Chin Chün-ch'ing, 424
Chin dynastic history (chin shih), 706
 Chin dynasty (1115–1234), 628–643,
 644, 818–830. *See also* Jurchen
chin-hsi 近習. *See* attendants, “close”
 Chin-Hsi 近習 Hsia peace treaty (1124),
 634
chin-hsing 金星. *See* Venus
 Chin Hsüan-tsung 金宣宗 (r. 1213–23),
 819, 822, 829
 Chin Hui, 156, 158
 Chin Kao-tsu 晉高祖 (r. 936–42), 179.
 See Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭
 (Chin Kao-tsu 晉高祖, r. 936–42)
 Chin-ling 金陵 (Nanking), 124, 166,
 167, 220. *See also* Chiang-ning
chin-lu chiao. *See* Rites of the Golden
 Register
 Chin-ming, 306, 307
 Chin Shao-ti 晉少帝 (r. 942–47). *See* Shih
 Ch'ung-kuei 石重貴
chin-shih 進士 degree and degree holders,
 115, 122, 137, 161–162, 190,
 238, 254, 300, 358, 586, 587,
 672, 691, 695–696, 757, 765,
 767, 778, 783, 803, 816, 831,
 842, 844, 858, 859, 860, 864,
 879, 880, 882, 883, 884, 885,
 886, 888, 889, 891, 893, 897,
 903, 904, 905, 911, 924, 925,
 944
 Chin Shih-tsung 金世宗 (r. 1161–89). *See*
 Wan-yen; Wan-yen Wu-lu
 (Emperor Chin Shih-tsung
 金世宗, r. 1161–89); Wu-lu
 Chin T'ai-tsu 金太祖 (r. 1115–23). *See*
 A-ku-ta (Chin T'ai-tsu 金太祖,
 r. 1115–23); Wan-yen A-ku-ta
 (Ch'in T'ai-tsu, r. 1115–23)
 Chin T'ai-tsung 太宗 (1075–1135,
 r. 1123–35), 633, 675. *See also*
 Wan-yen; Wu-chi-mai;
 Wu-ch'i-mai (Chin T'ai-tsung, 1075–1135, r. 1123–)
 Chin Yüan, 903
ch'in 親. *See* parent
 Ch'in 親, 43
 Ch'in 親, Prince of. *See* Li Shou-chen
 李守貞 (Prince of Ch'in 親)
 Ch'in-ai 欽哀太后, Dowager Empress
 (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后,
 r. 1032–39), 288
 Ch'in-chou 秦州, 104, 123–124, 312,
 800, 828
 Ch'in 親 dynasty (221–06 BCE), 134
 Ch'in Erh-shih huang-ti (r. 210–207
 BCE), 743
 Ch'in-feng, 23, 312, 314, 393, 549,
 619
 Ch'in Hsi (d. 1161), 690, 691, 703
 Ch'in Kuei 秦檜 (1090–1155, 1128–55),
 26, 30, 32, 672–673, 676, 677,
 679, 680, 703, 721, 786, 793
 death of, 703
 and the monopoly of power, 690–693
 tampering with the dynastic record,
 691–693
 and Treaty of 1141, 711
 Ch'in-ling Mountains 秦嶺, 4, 10, 23
 Ch'in-sheng 欽聖太后, Dowager Empress
 (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后, r.
 1045–1101), 553–554, 561,
 616. *See also* Ch'in-sheng
 Regency
 and the anti-reform policies of
 Hsüan-jen, 562
 and the New Policies, 561
 rehabilitating anti-reformists, 563
 Ch'in-sheng Regency. *See* Dowager
 Empress Ch'in-sheng 欽聖太后

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1025

- Ch'in-tsung 欽宗 (Chao Huan, 1100–61, r. 1126–27), 29, 615, 637, 644, 645. *See also* Chao Huan (Sung Ch'in-tsung), 1100–61, r. 1126–27)
 death of, in captivity, 643
 stripped of imperial status, 642
 used as political leverage by Chin, 687
- Ch'in Tsung-ch'üan 秦宗權, 43, 55, 135, 145, 146, 149, 151, 156
- ch'in-wang* 勸王. *See* “rally on behalf of the emperor”
- Ching (Liao Mu-tsung 遼穆宗, 951–69), 113
- Ching, Prince of, 335
- Ching-ch'ao fu 京兆府. *See* Hsi-an 西安
- ching-ch'ao kuan* 京朝官. *See* civil service, senior, or the administrative civil service division
- ching-chieh fa* 經界法. *See* land survey policy
- Ching-chou₂ 莊州, 180, 918
- Ching-chou₃ 景州, 632
- Ching-hsi, 307
- Ching-hsia, 621
- Ching Hsiang 敬翔, 56
- Ching-hu circuits 菊湖路
 North, 329
 South, 328–329
- Ching-k'ang 靖康 (1126–27), 637
- ching-k'ang chib-nan* 靖康. *See* Calamity of Ching-k'ang
- ching-lüeh an-fu shih* 經略安撫使 (military commissioner, pacification commissioner)
- ching-lüeh ssu*. *See* military affairs commission
- Ching-nan 蒜南, 10, 158. *See also* Nan-p'ing 南平
 campaign, 50–51
 and Chu Wen 朱溫, 50, 195–196
 diplomatic skill in, 133
 importance of, 147–148
- and Kao Chi-ch'ang 高季昌, 173
 and Li Shou-chen 李守貞, 109
 as part of Min kingdom, 220
 and T'ai-ts'u 太祖, 14, 224
 trade revenues of, 181
 tribute relation to north, 179
- Ching T'ang 京鑑 (1138–1200), 778, 781, 782, 789, 807
- “Ching-tung rebel” (Sung Chiang), 588
- ching-yen* 經筵. *See* Imperial Seminar
- Ching Yen-kuang 景延廣, 91, 97–99, 101, 102
- Ching-yüan 湣原, 23, 307, 312, 314
- Ch'ing-ch'i county, 624, 626
- Ch'ing-chou 青州, 627
- Ch'ing-chou₂ 慶州, 300, 312, 470
- Ch'ing 清 dynasty (1644–1911), 754
- Ch'ing-hai (Kokonor) Lake, 252, 352
- Ch'ing-i lu, 182
- Ch'ing-li 慶曆 era (Felicitous Chronometry, 1041–49), 312
- Ch'ing-li 慶曆 reform movement (1043–45), 22, 25, 316–334, 350
- ching-miao* 青苗. *See* Green Sprouts
- ching-miao ch'ien* 青苗錢. *See* Green Sprouts cash
- ching-miao fa* 青苗法. *See* Green Sprouts rural credit act
- Ch'ing-t'ang 靑唐, 26, 616, 617–619
- Ch'ing-yüan 慶元 (1195–1201), 169
- Chinggis khan (Temüjin, r. 1206–27), 818, 845, 853
- chiu-chin fu-pao* 就近附保. *See* auxiliaries to the local guards
- Chiu-lung River 九龍江, 173
- Chiu Wu-tai shih 舊五代史, 145, 183, 184
- Ch'iu Ch'ung 丘崇 (1135–1208), 793, 794, 805, 806
 on Wu family influence in Szechwan, 798

1026

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Ch'iü Fu 裴甫, 136–137, 153
 Ch'iu Yüeh 丘岳, 865
 chivalry (*jen-hsia* 仁俠), 141–142,
 144
 Cho-chou 淳州, 87, 632
 Chou 周, Duke of, 608
 Chou-ch'en Princess 周陳國大長公主
 (Supreme Princess of
 Chou-ch'en), 334
 Chou Chih, 535, 538
 Chou Hang, 334
 Chou Hsing-feng 周行逢, 201
chou-hsüeh 州學. *See* schools, prefectural
 Chou Huai-cheng 周懷政 (?–1020),
 277
 Chou Kou (Prince K'ang), 643
 Chou K'uei 周葵, 729
 Chou Kung-ti 周恭帝 (r. 956), 961. *See*
 also Kuo Tsung-hsün 郭宗訓
Chou-li 周禮. *See* Rites of Chou
 Chou Mi 周密 (1239–98), 810,
 960
 Chou Pao-ch'üan 周保權, 201
 Chou Pi-ta 周必大 (1126–1204), 754,
 757, 764, 766, 769, 787, 788,
 790, 793
 Chou Shih-tsung 周世宗 (r. 954–59),
 201, 202–203. *See also* Ch'ai
 Jung; Kuo Jung
 Chou T'ai-tsú 周太祖. *See* Kuo Wei 郭威
 (Chou T'ai-tsú 周太祖, r. 951–54)
 Chou Te-wei 周德威, 61, 64
 Chou Tun-i 周敦頤, 877, 902
 Chou Wei-te, 301
 Chou Yin 周尹, 429
 Chu, Lady, 335
 Chu Chen, 49
 Chu Ch'ung, 604
 Chu Ch'üan-chung 朱全忠. *See* Chu Wen
 朱溫 (r. 907–12)
 Chu Ch'üan-yü 朱全昱, 52
 Chu-ho-lo Kuo-le-ch'i 珠赫呼勒齊
 (d. 1219), 822–823
 Chu Hsi 朱熹 (1130–1200), 28, 31, 353,
 455, 745, 746, 758, 769, 775,
 777, 783, 784, 785, 788, 789,
 790, 814, 815, 877, 899
 commentaries of, 902
 Chu Hsüan 朱瑄, 50
chu-hu 主戶. *See* household, resident
 Chu Hung-chao 朱弘昭, 82
chu-i ch'ien 助役錢. *See* service-assistance
 fee
 Chu Kuang-t'ing 朱光庭, 493, 510–511,
 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 528,
 543
 Chu Mien (1075–1126), 604, 605, 624,
 638
 Chu Ming-chih 朱明之, 451
 Chu Sheng-fei 朱勝非 (1082–1144), 651,
 673
 Chu Shou-yin 朱守殷, 75
 Chu Wen 朱溫 (Liang T'ai-tsú 梁太祖,
 r. 907–12), 4–5. *See also* Chu
 Ch'üan-chung 朱全忠; Liang
 T'ai-tsú 梁太祖
 and Chao-tsung 昭宗, 188
 and Ch'eng Ju 成汝, 147–148
 and Ch'in Tsung-chüan, 151
 and Chu Yu-jang, 148
 claims to imperial authority of,
 188
 conquests of (by 901), 49
 financial administration under, 57
 and Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 43, 206
 and the Later Liang dynasty, 52–61
 rise to dominance through military
 expansion (c. 895–907), 45–61
 and Sun Ju 孫儒, 146–147
 Chu Wen-chin 朱文進, 168
 Chu Yu-chen 朱友貞 (Liang Mo-ti 梁末帝,
 913–23), 61, 67
 Chu Yu-ch'ien 朱友謙, 65
 Chu Yu-jang, 148
 Chu Yu-kuei 朱友珪 (r. 912–13), 61
 Chu Yu-wen 朱友文, 61

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1027

- Ch'u 楚, 109, 133, 148-150, 173, 174-175, 179, 193, 195-196, 223, 224
 Ch'u 楚, King of (*Ch'u wang* 楚王), 158, 197
 Ch'u 楚, Prince of, 54
 Ch'u-chou 楚州, 126, 625, 795, 933
Ch'u wang 楚王. *See* Ch'u 楚, King of
chuan-men bsiieh 專門學. *See* learning,
 specialist
chuan yung hsiao-jen 專用小人. *See*
 “employing mean and petty
 men”
chuan-yiin shih 轉運使. *See* intendents,
 fiscal
ch'uan-fa sha-men 傳法沙門. *See*
 Propagating Abbot
chuang-t'ien 莊田. *See* estates, manorial
chuang-ting 壯丁. *See* stalwart
chuang-yüan 莊園. *See* estates, large
Ch'un-ch'i 春秋. *See* Spring and Autumn
 annals
 Ch'un-hsi 淳熙 era (Pure Serenity,
 1174-89), 712, 737-755
 Chung Ch'i 鍾起, 142
 Chung Chuan, 147
 Chung Hsiang, 665
chung-i-chüan 忠義軍. *See* army, “loyal and
 righteous”
 Chung-shan 仲山, 636, 637, 641
 Ch'ung Shih-tao 種師道, 638, 640
Chung-shu ling 中書令. *See* Secretariat,
 Director of
Chung-shu men-hsia 中書門下. *See*
 Secretariat-Chancellery
Chung-shu sheng 中書省. *See* Secretariat
 Chung-tu 中都, 818, 819
 Chung-wu 忠武, army 兵, 157, 158
chung-yüan 中原. *See* Central Plains
Chung-yung 中庸, 815, 902
 Ch'ung-cheng Hall 崇政殿. *See* Hall for
 the Veneration of Governance
- Ch'ung-cheng tien* 崇政殿. *See* Hall for the
 Veneration of Governance
 Ch'ung-ch'ing, 954
 Ch'ung-hua Palace, 754, 757, 761, 767,
 785
chung-i-chüan 忠義軍. *See* army, loyal and
 righteous
 Ch'ung-hui 安重晦, 78
 Ch'ung-ning 崇寧 era (Revering the
 Hsi-ning era, 1102-07), 554,
 569
 Ch'ung O 種謙, 23, 354, 469, 470,
 473-476
ch'ung-san tie-ssu 重三疊四. *See* offices,
 redundant
 Ch'ung-tsung, Emperor (Wei-ming
 Ch'ien-shun), 619, 620
ch'ung-wen ch'ing-wu 重文輕武. *See*
 emphasizing the civil and
 de-emphasizing the military
chü 局. *See* purchase station
chü-lien 聚歛. *See* fiscalism
chü-yang fa 居養法. *See* Poorhouse policy
 Ch'ü-chou 衢州, 625, 949
 Ch'ü-fu 曲阜, 927
 Ch'ü-pu-fan 區布範, 329
 Ch'ü Tuan 曲端, 659, 660
 Ch'üan, Dowager Empress (*huang*
t'ai-hou 皇太后), 945. *See also*
 Ch'üan, Empress
 Ch'üan, Empress (1241-1309), 928,
 929. *See also* Ch'üan, Dowager
 Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后)
 Ch'üan-chou 泉州, 133, 151-152, 163,
 168, 169, 177, 184-185, 950
 Ch'üan-chou2 全州, 940
 Ch'üan Han-sheng, 908
Ch'üan Sung wen, xi
 Ch'üan Tzu-ts'ai 全子才, 860, 861, 864
Chüeb-i yüan 權易院. *See* Trade Monopoly
 Office
Chüeb-huo wu. *See* Bureau of Monopoly
 Goods

- chiün-chiang* 郡將. *See* militia, officials
- chiün-shu fa* 均輸法. *See* tribute, “equalized tribute measure”; Tribute Transport and Distribution measure
- Chün-tzu Pass 君子關, 250
- circuit, regional (*lu*), 231–233, 748. *See also* specific circuit
- cities, frontier, 20. *See also* border
- civil councilor, assistant (*chih-cheng* 知政), 368
- civil service, 35, 237–241. *See also* bureaucracy; military families, hereditary
- administrative level (*ching-ch'ao kuan* 京朝官), 349, 460, 461
- examinations, 324, 787
- abolished by Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 585
- consequences of, 22
- and Hsü Wen 徐溫, 161
- and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 121
- in the Later Chou, 236
- and Li Ching 李璟, 200
- reform of, proposed by Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹 and Fu Pi 富弼, 318–319
- replaced by state educational system, 571
- restoration of, under Kao-tsung 高宗, 660
- in the Sung dynasty, 295
- and T'ai-tsung, 13, 237–238
- and T'ai-tsung 太宗, 246, 254
- and Wang An-shih 王安石, 364
- and Wu-Yüeh 吳越, 190
- and Ying-tsung, 345, 346
- executory level (*hsüan-jen* 選人), 349, 460, 461
- military servitors, 460
- titular offices in, 458
- clansmen, imperial, 296, 776, 781
- Clark, Hugh R., 5, 10
- Classics Mat, 126, 377
- clerics (*li2*), 241
- clinics, charitable, 596
- clique (*ssu tang*), 258, 261, 451. *See also* factionalism
- cloth, 223
- coinage. *See* currency, coinage
- comet, 579, 580, 581. *See also* portents, cosmological
- command, garrison (*tu-t'ung ssu*), 29
- commandant (*liu-hou*), 146, 147
- supreme (*k'ai-fu i-t'ung san-ssu* 開府儀同三司), 782
- commander
- district (*tu-chien* 都監), 301
- military (*pu-shu* 部署), 305, 312
- zone (*ch'ien-hsia* 鈞轄), 302
- Commander-in-chief (*Tu-tu* 都督), 667, 669
- Commander of the Eight Encampments of Infantry and Cavalry, 145
- Commander of the Palace Army, 11
- commission, functional (*ch'ai-ch'ien*) or office (*chih*), 458
- Commission for State Revenue, 70
- commissioner, 68–69
- for the consideration of benefit and harm (*hsiang-tuli-hai kuan*), 379
- defense, grand (*shou-yü shib* 守禦使), 646
- finance (*san-ssu shib* 三司使). *See* Finance Commission
- investigative (*ch'a-fang shib* 察訪使), 382
- military (*chieh-tu-shib*), 669
- palace, 56, 92, 97
- regional (*chieh-tu shib* 節度使), 230, 233, 782
- regional surveillance (*kuan-ch'a shib* 觀察使), 782
- surveillance (*kuan-ch'a shib* 觀察使), 150, 321
- of waterways and agriculture (*tu-shib* *ying-t'ien shib*),

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1029

- Commissioner for State Revenue
(*tsu-yung shih* 租庸使), 69, 76
- Commissioner of Military Affairs, 666, 671
- Commissioner of the Imperial Encampment (*yü-ying shih* 御營使), 648, 653, 666
- commodities. *See specific commodity*
- community defense system. *See mutual security system (pao-chia 保甲)*
- Compendium of rituals and paraphernalia of the Dowager Empress* (*Huang-t'ai-hou i-chih* 皇太后儀制), 288
- Compendium of the institutions of the dynasty* (*hui-yao* 會要), 256
- Comprehensive mirror to aid in government* (*Tzu-chih t'ung-chien* 資治通鑑, 1067–84), 80, 158, 182, 256, 487, 900
- conciliation (*tiao-t'ing*), 526, 527
- Confucian
- Classics, 237
 - ideals, 873
 - values. *See affection, fraternal; duty, filial; virtue*
- Confucianism (*Ju-hsüeh* 儒學), 783, 787. *See also* Neo-Confucianism; *Tao-hsüeh* 道學
- conscripts, 223, 333, 400, 475, 605, 866, 911
- bowmen (*kung-shou* 弓手), 407
- labor, 743
- military, 743
- conservatives, 487–514. *See also* memorials; Shen-tsung (Chao Hsü 趙頊, 1048–85, r. 1067–85); Ssu-ma Kuang 司馬光 (1019–86); Wu Ch'ung 吳充
- Conspicuous of border region defense preparedness* (*Pei-pien yao-lan* 備邊要覽), 307
- constellation (*chen*). *See portents, cosmological*
- controller-general (*t'ung-p'an* 通判), 231
- Controller of National Finance (*chih kuo-yung shih* 制國用使), 722
- conventionalists (*liu-su ch'un-tang* 流俗群黨), 365, 371
- conventionality, slavish (*yin-hsün mo-su chih-pi* 因循末俗之弊), 362
- copper, 122, 223, 225, 441, 608
- coral, 186
- corruption, 113, 116, 121, 208, 245, 588, 590, 591, 592, 598, 599, 600, 910
- corvée labor
- amnesty from, under T'ai-tsui, 228
 - demands for
 - under Kuo Jung 郭榮, 121
 - under Liu Ch'ung 劉崇, 113
 - and fiscal intendants, 232
 - and Han Ch'i 韓琦, 318
 - and Hua-chou2 滑州, 283
 - and Jen-tsung, 291
 - and prefectural armies, 235
- cosmology, correlative, 608, 609. *See also* portents, cosmological
- cotton, 684
- Council of State (*tu-t'ang* 都堂), 21, 25, 368–373, 513
- Councilor of State
- Assistant (*ts'an-chih cheng-shih* 參知政事), 246, 281
 - Chief (*ch'eng-hsiang*; *tsai-hsiang*), 26, 236, 237, 368, 462, 725
 - de facto*, 462
- counterfeiting, 327
- county (*hsien*), 230. *See specific county*
- coup, xi fn1
- court (*ch'ao-t'ing*)
- inner (*nei*), 887
 - outlaw (*wei-t'ing* 偽庭), 188
- Court calendar* (*chü-ch'i lu*), 339
- Court Diary of Activity and Repose* (*Ch'i-chii chu*), 691

- Court Mentor (*shao-fu* 少傅), 713
 Court of Agricultural Supervision
(Ssu-nung ssu 司農寺), 381–382,
 393, 401, 409, 413, 434, 460,
 463
 Court of Judicial Review (*Ta-li ssu*
大理司), 456
 Court of Palace Attendants (*Hsüan-hui*
yüan 宣徽院), 56–57
 Court of State Ceremonial (*Hung-lu ssu*
鴻臚寺), 269
 Court of the Imperial Clan (*Tsung-cheng*
ssu), 297
 Court of the Imperial Treasury (*T'ai-fu*
ssu), 405
 courtier. *See specific actor*
 cowhides, 117
 credit. *See debt*
 criminals. *See bandits*
 critics, policy (*chien-kuan*), 21, 288.
See also memorials; remonstrance
 crop failures, 879
 crossbow, 413
 cult. *See specific cult*
 cultivation, ritual grain-, 729
 culture, refinements of (*wen*), 513, 556
 currency, 186, 388. *See also* money;
 taxation, taxes
 coinage, 92, 127, 130, 177, 208,
 224–229, 684
 copper, 187, 327, 441, 749, 908
 iron, 187, 202, 312, 327
 iron and tin, 77
 lead, 187
 of lead and iron, 181
 tin, 187
hui-tzu (paper currency), 749
 paper money, 327, 748–749,
 908–909
 Sung new issue, 909
 “current funds” (*hsien-tsai*), 426
Daily Calendar (*jib-li*), 691
 daughters, imperial (*huang-nü*), 258
 Davis, Richard L., 31, 32, 33, 34, 36
 death sentence, 543
 debate, suppression of, 1070s–1207, 32
 debt, 395, 416, 431
 “deceased father,” imperial (*huang-k'ao*),
 342
 “deceased imperial paternal uncle”
(huang-po), 342
 decrees, imperial (*yü-pi*), 285, 723
 defection. *See individual actors*
 defendants (*yü-hou*), 398
 defense, local
 community arms (or mutual
 security) system of (*pao chia*),
 218
 training command system
(chib-chiang fa) of, 218
 deferrals, payment (*i-ko*), 416
 demotion. *See specific actor*
 Department of Ministries
 Left and Right Councilors (*tso-yu*
ch'eng-hsiang) of the, 725
 Left and Right Executives (*shang-shu*
tso-yu p'u-yeh) of the, 725
 Department of State Affairs (*Shang-shu*
sheng), 65, 462, 652
 Assistant Director of the Left
(shang-shu tso-ch'eng), 481, 491
 Assistant Director of the Right,
 553
 assisting civil councilor (*ts'an-chib*
cheng-shih 參知政事) of the,
 463
 chief councilor of the left,
 vice-director of (*Shang-shu*
tso-p'u-yeh t'ung chung-shu
men-hsia p'ing-chang-shih), 652
 chief councilor of the right,
 vice-director of (*Shang-shu*
yu-p'u-yeh t'ung chung-shu
men-hsia p'ing-chang-shih), 652
 Director of, 59, 65

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1031

- Left Co-director of (*shang-shu tso p'u-yeh*) of the, 463
 Right Co-director (*yu p'u-yeh*) of the, 463
 detached service (*shang-fan*), 410–412
 Di Cosmo, Nicola, 15–16, 17, 33
 dikes (*yen*), 862. *See also* irrigation; specific location; water conservancy networks; waterways
 diplomacy. *See specific actor*
 directives, council (*t'ang-t'ien*), 246
 Directorate of Armaments, 471, 472
 Directorate of Education (*Kuo-tzu chien*), 364, 588, 924
 Directorate of Waterways (*tu-shui chien*), 393
 Disasters, natural, 39, 820, 830, 844, 874, 881, 902
 and economic stability, 830
 under Li-tsung, 906–907
 “discourteous wrangling,” 277
 disease. *See* epidemics
 distribution, 171
 Divine Empyrean (*Shen-hsiao*). *See* Taoism, Divine Empyrean sect of
 “Divine Protector” (*bu-fa shan-shen 護法善神*, Tseng Pu 曾布), 450
 division (*fang*), 382
 divorce, 292. *See also* specific actors
 documents (*shu*), 41
 “Documents from Heaven,” 270–273
 Dowager Consort (*huang t'ai-fei*), 280
 Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou 皇太后*), 280. *See also* specific actors
 drafted service policy or system (*ch'ai-i fa*), 397, 500, 544, 545, 592
 drill measure (*t'uan chiao-fa*), team, 413, 495
 drill “teams” (*t'uan*), 413
 drought, 84, 100, 118, 174, 291, 325, 447, 452, 470, 818, 830, 868, 872, 906
 drugs, 684. *See also* medicinals; medicine
 dual administration empires, 16
 dual appointments, 458–459
 Duke of State (*kuo-kung*), 708
 Duong Dinh Nghe, 170–171
 duty, filial, 340–343, 764
 dynasty-building, 711
 founding (*ch'uang-yeh*), 711
 preserving (*shou-ch'eng*), 711
 reviving (*chung-hsing*), 711
 Earth Deity, 271
 earthquakes, 298, 325, 844, 907
 Eastern Capital, 52
 Eastern Han dynasty (25–220), 648
 eclipse, solar. *See* portents, cosmological economy. *See specific actor measure, actor, event, reform*
 edicts. *See specific edict*
 imperial, 780
 education
 reform, 318–319
 by Sung Jen-tsung 宋仁宗, 294–296
 by Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 585, 586–587, 589
 state support for, 694–695
 Eight Battalions of Hang-chou
 (*Hang-chou pa-tu 杭州八都*), 140, 142
 Eight Conduct (*pa-hsing 八行*) policy, 580, 587, 611
 eight punishments (*pa-hsing2 八刑*), 587
 Eight Tombs, 861
 “eight treasures” or “eight imperial seals” (*pa-pao 八寶*), 697
 elder (*ch'i-chang 耆長*), 397, 407, 427
 elder/stalwart township plan (*ti-fen ch'i-chuang lin-li*), local, 408

1032

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- elephant, war, 227
- elite
 - literocentric political, 13–14, 37
 - and court factionalism, 575
 - exam-based, 14
 - and separation from the state, 35–36
- scholarly (*shih-ta-fu* 士大夫), 13, 21, 28, 253, 256, 350, 360, 419, 450, 458, 729
- emissary. *See specific actor*
- emoluments. *See specific emolument*
- emperor (*huang*, *huang-ti*), 143, 342
- Emperor Emeritus (*t'ai-shang huang-ti* 太上皇帝), 637
- emphasizing the civil and
 - de-emphasizing the military (*ch'ung-wen ch'ing-wu* 重文輕武), 12
- “employing mean and petty men” (*chuan yung hsiao-jen* 專用小人), 376
- empress (*hou*), 342
- en-shih* 恩施, (benevolenced promotion), 412
- Encyclopedia of the Yung-lo* 永樂 era
 - (*Yung-lo ta-tien* 永樂大典, 1408), 255
- “engrossers” (*chien-ping* 兼并), 389–393, 396, 397, 401, 406, 417, 419, 442, 496, 590, 703
- anti-, 404–406
- early Southern Sung, 700
- government acting like, 443
- Shao-sheng restraint of, 547
- “smashing the” (*ts'ui chien-ping* 墓兼并), 392
- and state trade act, 444
- “enriching the nation and strengthening its military power” (*fu-kuo ch'iang-ping*), 384
- envoy, 763. *See specific actor*
- epidemics, 316, 907, 951
- equilibrium, geopolitical, in the post-Shan-yüan 潛淵 era (1005–67), 20–24
- “era of change” (*keng-hua* 更化), 875
- erb-fu* 二府. *See Two Administrations*
- erudite literatus (*po-hsüeh hung-tz'u* 博學宏詞), 757, 816, 924
- Essential regulations of the Sung* (*Sung hui-yao* 宋會要), 414, 557, 558
- Essentials of the military classics* (*Wu-ching tsung-yao* 武經總要), 307
- Establishing Centrality and Balancing the State era (1101–02, *Chien-chung ching-kuo* 建中靖國), 554, 566, 567
- estates
 - large (*chuang-yüan* 莊園), 191
 - large, owned by temples, 700
 - manorial (*chuang-t'ien* 莊田), 121, 326
- ethnic group. *See specific ethnic group*
- eunuchs
 - as army supervisors, 72, 76, 307, 473 and the Capital Security Office (*Huang-ch'eng ssu* 皇城司), 234
 - under Chu Wen 朱溫, 48, 56
 - and consorts, 772
 - controlling agencies, 591
 - and Dowager Empress Liu, 282
 - end of domination of inner court by, 639
 - after fall of Lin-an 臨安, 944
 - and Jen-tsung, 290, 313
 - and Kuang-tsung 光宗, 760
 - and Kuo Ch'ung-t'ao 郭崇緯, 71
 - in the Later Liang, 69
 - under Li Mao-chen 李茂貞, 42
 - and Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗, 70
 - and Li-tsung, 887–888
 - under Liu Ch'ang, 227
 - prohibition against, meddling in court affairs, 652
 - residing in inner palace, 56
 - after Shih Mi-yüan 史彌遠, 33

- and Ts'ui Yin 崔胤, 47
 and Wu-yü 兀欲, 105
 evaluation, reports, annual, 748
 Ever-normal Graneries (*ch'ang-p'ing ts'ang* 常平倉), 380, 396, 418, 426
 restoration of, 579
 Ever-normal State Trade Agency (*Ch'ang-p'ing shih-i ssu* 常平市易司), 405
 Ever Victorious Army (*Wen-sheng chiin*), 309
 examination
 metropolitan, 238
 palace, 238
 preliminary, 238
 examiner, chief (*tu chien-cheng* 都檢正), 382
 exchange
 “provisioning” (*ju-chung*) method of grain, 284
 ratios of (*ch'ing-chung* 輕重), 390
 execution, 67, 83, 102, 107, 108, 110, 111, 926
 exile. *See* banishment (*an-chih* 察訪使)
 expansionism
 between 951–54, 112–119
 between 954–58, 119–132
 10th century, in the north, 4–10
Extensive records of the T'ai-p'ing hsing-kuo
 太平興國 era (*T'ai-p'ing kuang-chi* 太平廣記), 175, 185, 255
 Fabrication Bureaus (*Tsao-tso chii* 造作局), 603
 factionalism, 543, 747, 770, 783. *See also* factions (*p'eng-tang* 朋黨)
 and Che-tsung, 26–27
 and the conservative coalition, 574
 détente, under Liu Chih 劉摯, 526–529
 and elite orientation, 575
 and “factional treachery,” 528, 537
 and Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹, 297
 and Hsia Sung 夏竦, 321–323
 and Hsiao-tsung 孝宗, 721
 of the Hsüan-jen regency, 530
 in the late eleventh century, 35
 Lo, in Yüan-yu 元祐 era, 510–511, 518–521
 after Shan-yüan 潛淵, 21
 and Shen-tsung, 28, 365
 Shu 蜀, in Yüan-yu 元祐 era, 510, 511, 518–521
 Shuo, in Yüan-yu 元祐 era, 510
 and Tseng Pu 曾布, 554
 and Wang An-shih 王安石, 376
 and Ying-tsung, 324, 340, 351
 Yüan-yu 元祐 era (1086–93), 509–514
 factions (*p'eng-tang* 朋黨), 297, 299, 512, 680. *See also* factionalism
 Lo, 509–514, 518–521
 reform, 485
 Shu 蜀, 509–514, 516, 518
 Shuo, 509–514, 516
 Szechwanese, 520
 Yüan-yu 元祐, 552–553, 573, 578, 582
 “factions (*tang*) and cliques (*p'eng-tang* 朋黨), 511–512
 families of great officials (*i-kuan chih tsu* —貴之族), 162
 famine, 99, 100, 299, 307, 308, 316, 324, 325, 452, 818, 855, 881, 907. *See also* cannibalism
 cash (*ch'ien-huang* 錢荒), 441, 442
 Fan Chen 范鎮, 341, 373, 387
 Fan-ch'eng 樊城, 922–923
 Fan Ch'eng-ta 范成大 (1126–93), 728, 735
 Fan Chih 范質, 115
 Fan Ch'iung, 663
 Fan Ch'un-jen 范純仁 (1027–1101), 479, 491, 493, 512, 523, 524–525, 529, 536, 563

1034

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Fan Ch'un-jen 范純仁 (*cont.*)
 banishment of, 543
 and Dowager Empress Ch'in-sheng
 欽聖太后, 563
 on drafted service, 503
 on hired service, 545
 pleading clemency for anti-reform
 coalition, 539
 rehabilitated by Tseng Pu 曾布, 554
 and Ying-tsung, 341-342
- Fan Chung 范鍾, 883, 884
- Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹 (989-1052), 23,
 205, 316, 505, 563
 on adult male salt cash, 194
 on agriculture, 174
 and the Ch'ing-li 廉曆 reforms
 (1043-45), 317-318, 321, 350
 on compulsory drill, 445
 and Jen-tsung, 290, 291, 292, 299,
 306, 308, 309, 314
 and Li Yüan-hao 李元昊, 311, 312
 and Lü I-chien 呂義簡, 297-298
 memorials, 287
 and prefecture schools, 318
 and Shih Chieh, 321
 on the Treaty of Shan-yüan 漒淵, 267
 and tribute grain, 320-323
- Fan Feng 范諷, 292
- Fan Ju-wei 范汝為, 665
- fan-ping* 蕃兵. *See* army of frontier tribal
 troops
- Fan T'ang (1097-1134), 671
- Fan Tsu-yü 范祖禹, 491, 492, 493, 512,
 523, 530, 536, 539, 542, 575
 banishment of, 543
 on reformists, 532
- Fan Tsung-yin 范宗尹 (1098-1136),
 653, 664, 667, 669, 672,
 673
- Fan Wen-hu 范文虎, 922, 931, 942
- Fan Yen-kuang 范延光, 89, 90-92
- Fan Yung 范壅, 286, 290, 303, 306
- fang*. *See* division (*fang*); offices, staff
fang2. *See* ward
- fang-cheng* 坊正. *See* headman,
 neighborhood
- Fang Hsin-ju 方信孺 (1177-1222),
 806
- Fang La, rebellions (1120), 605, 615,
 622-626, 636
- Fang-shan Plain 方山原, 800
- Fang-shan yüan, 660
- fang-shih* 方士. *See* occult master
- fang-t'ien* 方田. *See* survey, square-fields
 land
- fang-t'ien chün-shui fa* 方田均稅法. *See* Land
 Survey and Equitable Tax policy
- farmer-soldiers (*fu-ping* 府兵), 318
- farmers, 124. *See also* agriculture; mutual
 security system (*pao-chia* 保甲);
 schools, land for
- farming. *See* agriculture
- favorites
- Ming-chou 明州, 875-886
 palace, 31, 33, 72, 744-746, 769,
 788, 888
- Felicitous Chronometry. *See* Ch'ing-li
 廉曆 era
- "felonious ministers," 557. *See also* Six
 Felons (*liu tsei* 六賊)
- Feng Cheng 馮拯, 281, 282
- Feng Chi 馮楫榘 (d. 1152), 679
- Feng Ching 馮京, 373, 377, 430
- Feng-chou 凤州 (Liang-ch'uan), 124,
 660, 853
- Feng-chou2 封州, 153, 154, 332
- Feng-chuang k'u* 封椿庫. *See* Sealed
 Treasury (Storehouse for the
 Reserves of the State Treasury)
- Feng Chüan 馮涓, 161-162
- Feng-hsiang 凤翔, 48, 53, 54, 107, 108,
 800, 852
 by 895, 42
- Feng Hsing-hsi 馮行翼, 55
- feng-shan*. *See* sacrifices
- Feng Su 馮宿, 161
- Feng Tao 馮道, 61, 77, 83-86, 92, 97,
 99, 115

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1035

- Feng-tz'u Temple 奉慈廟, 291
 Feng Yü 愚玉, 100
 Feng Yüan 愚元 (975–1037), 282
 ferry crossings (*bo-tu* 河渡), government, 398, 423
 fiefdom, insignificant (*pi-i* 敝邑), 684
 “Filial Ancestor” (Hsiao-tsung 孝宗), 754
 filial piety, 291, 336
 finance. *See also* Finance Commission (*San-ssu* 三司); Finance Planning Commission (*Chib-chih san-ssu t'iaoli ssu* 制置三司條例司); Wang An-shih 王安石 (1021–86)
 men skilled at (*shan li-ts'ai che* 善理財者), 25, 77, 389
 finance, public (*chib-ts'ai* 治財), 388
 Finance Commission (*San-ssu* 三司), 21, 77, 239, 241, 261, 274, 457, 463
 Finance Planning Commission (*Chib-chih san-ssu t'iaoli ssu*), 369, 378–381, 390, 392, 393, 397, 400, 459, 464, 589
 and Court of Agricultural Supervision, 401
Finest blossoms from the garden of elegant writing (*Wen-yüan ying-bua* 文苑英華), 255
 fires, 831, 844, 906
 fiscalism (*chü-lien* 聚歛), 419
 fish, 225
 “Fish-head Minister.” *See* Lu Tsung-tao 魯宗道 (966–1029)
 five circles of mourning (*wu-fu*), 600–602
 “Five Devils,” 272, 274
 Five Dynasties (907–60), 1, 4, 5, 206, 213
 Flessel, Klaus, 326
 flogging, 790, 792, 810
 flooding, 99, 100, 118, 173, 174, 226, 283, 325, 326, 830, 844, 879, 906
 “flower and rock network” (*hua-shih wang* 花石綱), 604–606, 622, 625, 626, 636
 forbidden books. *See* censorship
 foreclosures. *See* credit, rural; debt; Green Sprouts; loans, forced (*i-p'ei* 抑配)
 foreign policy and foreign relations. *See specific actor, issue, or location*
 Former Shu dynasty (907–33), 10, 53, 54, 55, 134, 155–158, 160, 163–167
 fort. *See specific location*
 fortifications, defensive, 121. *See also specific location*
 foundation, dynastic, 57
 Four Books, 815
 Four Circuit Supervisorates, 231
 four garrisons (of the early Southern Sung), 669
Four great compendia of the Sung dynasty (*Sung ssu ta shu* 宋四大書), 254
 “four great generals,” 29
 “four perils,” 500
 franchise, 400
 Franke, Herbert, 891, 896
 frankincense, 184, 186
 frontier. *See also* border
 northern, 253
 region, in ninth century north China, 41
 southern, 328–334
 frugality. *See specific actor*
 fruit, 182, 431
 Fu-ch'a-chen 富察貞, 795
fu-ch'iang 富強. *See* prosperous and strong
 Fu-chien, xi, 955
 in the Ch'ing-li period, 328
 controlled by the Min kingdom, 133
 and Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 150–152

1036

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Fu-chien (*cont.*)
 and Li Ching 李璟, 200
 after the Min kingdom collapse, 163,
 168–170
 on an overland trade route, 182
 population movement to, 134
 population of (978), 135
 as a Shu state, 196
 tea growing in, 175
 and the Wang family, 190
 water projects in, 173
 Fu-chou 福州, 10, 138, 151–152, 168,
 177, 184, 950
 Fu-chou2 府州, 120, 122, 300, 309
 Fu-chou3 復州, 180, 928
 Fu-chou4 鄭州, 55, 954
 Fu-chou5 撫州, 358
fu-i 夫役. *See* service, labor
fu-jen 夫人. *See* specific consort
fu-jen ta-bsing 富大人姓. *See* rich men and
 great families
fu-kuo ch'iang-ping 富國強兵. *See* enriching
 the nation and strengthening
 its military power
 Fu-li 符離, 717, 754, 755
 Fu Liang, 648
fu pao-cheng 副保正 (assistant *pao-chia*
 leader), 408
 Fu Pi 富弼 (1004–83)
 and the Ch'ing-li 慶歷 reforms
 (1043–45), 316, 317–318, 321
 and Han Ch'i 韓琦, 339–340
 and Hsiao T'e-mo 蕭特默, 310–311
 after Jen-tsung, 337
 and Jen-tsung, 291, 350
 and the reorganization of military
 affairs reform, 313
 and Shen-tsung, 353, 356, 465
 and Shih Chieh 石介, 321–323
 and Wang An-shih 王安石, 368, 369,
 373, 378
fu-ping 府兵. *See* farmer-soldiers
 Fu-t'u 浮圖, 548
 Fu Yao-yü, 341–343, 515, 517–518
 Fu-yen, 23, 307, 312, 314, 551
 Fukien modern province, xi, 5, 133
 funeral. *See specific actor*
 gardens, pleasure, 604
 garrison. *See specific location*
 Gate of Rectified Ritual, 576
 general. *See specific actor*
 General Sales and General Purchase
 Markets (*Tsa-mai ch'ang*,
 Tsa-mai wu), 430
 gentleman (*lang*), 460
 true (*chiün-tzu* 君子), 514
 gift, annual, 314
 ginseng, 684
 Glorifying the tradition of Yao (*kuang*
Yao), 709
 “gods of soil and grain” (*she-chi* 社稷),
 942
 gold, 87, 280
 Gong Wei Ai, 31
 governance, good, 121
 “the way of” (*chih-tao* 治道), 724
 governors. *See also specific actors*
 civil (*kuan-ch'a shih* 觀察使), 40
 guard (*ya-chiün* 牙軍), 110
 military (*chieh-tu shih* 節度使), 667
 after the An Lu-shan 安祿山
 rebellions, 39
 appointed initially by their armies,
 207
 as honorifics, 303
 and Kao-tsung 高宗, 29
 after the Khitan invasion, 215
 under Kuo Wei 郭威, 115
 and the Metropolitan Command,
 217
 in north China, 40
 provincial, 109
 regional, 229
 replaced by fiscal intendants, 232
 separatist regional, 206–207

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1037

- and T'ai-ts'u 太祖, 12–13, 216–217, 229–230, 233, 241
 and T'ai-tsung 太宗, 246
 T'ang 唐, 4–5, 13, 39–41
 grace, special, 318, 325
 grain, 43, 57, 118, 222, 223, 252, 284, 302, 325, 326, 334
 direct networking (*chih-ta wang* 直達網) transport system, 593
 and the Huai-nan campaign, granary, 222, 326, 881
 prefectural, 126
 state, 92
 Granary System (*ts'ang-fa*), 383
 Grand Canal, 178, 222
 grandee (*ta-fu* 大夫), 460
 grave. *See specific actor or location*
 Great Centrality and Auspicious Talisman (*Ta-chung hsiang-fu* 大中祥符, 1008–17), 271
 Great Emperor of Everlasting Life (*Ch'ang-sheng ta-ti*), 612
 Great Heavenly Sage and King of Ch'u, 665
 Great Hsia empire, 21
 Great Liao (Ta Liao), 343
 Great Yen dynasty, 60
 Great Yin, 168
 Greater Shan-hsi circuit 陝西路, 23
 Green Sprouts. *See also* rural credit (*ch'ing-miao 青苗*)
 cash (*ch'ing-miao ch'ien 青苗錢*), 395
 disruptive effect of, 436
 policy (*ch'ing-miao ch'ing-miao fa*), 414–418
 revival under the Shao-sheng 紹聖, 546
 rural credit act (*ch'ing-miao fa* 青苗法), 370, 371–372, 374, 379, 394–397, 400, 441–442, 449, 468, 471, 491, 504–505
 guard
 large (*ta-pao 大保*), 408
 large guard chiefs (*ta-pao-chang* 大保長), 408, 410, 413, 428
 personal. *See* retainers, personal military (*pu-ch'ü 部曲*). *See also* bodyguard
 guardsmen, stalwart (*chuang-ting 壯丁*), 397
 guardsmen (*pao-ting* 保丁), 408
 guardsmen, property-owning (*chu-hu* 主戶), 410
 guild-exemption fee (*mien-hang ch'ien* 免行錢), 430, 443, 449
 revival of, under the Shao-sheng 紹聖, 547
 Gütük 貴由 (r. 1246–48), 868
 Hai-chou 海州, 627, 713, 714, 718
 Hai-ling 海陵, Prince (r. 1150–61), 31, 709. *See also* Wan-yen Liang 完顏亮
 and battle of Ts'ai-shih, 706
 1161 war of, 32
hai-po hsiang-yao 海舶香藥. *See* ships, overseas trade
 Hall for the Veneration of Governance (*Ch'ung-cheng tien* 崇政殿), 56, 68, 377
 Hall of Enlightenment (*Ming-t'ang* 明堂), 609, 696
 rituals, 874, 916
 Halls of Extended Clanship (*Tun-tsung yüan*), 601–602
 Han 漢, Empress (d. 1200), 779, 783, 809
 Han 漢, Lady, 773
 Han Chao-yin 韓昭胤, 84
 Han Chen 韓纁, 493
 Han Chenz 韓震, 934, 935
 Han Ch'eng 韓誠, 762, 764
 Han Ch'i 韓琦 (1008–75), 23, 323, 345, 353, 564, 762, 805
 and annual tribute, 344–346
 and Chao Tsung-chih, 337–339

- Han Ch'i 韓琦 (*cont.*)
 and the Ch'ing-li 廢曆 reforms (1043-45), 316, 317-318, 321
 denouncing the Green Sprouts policy, 370
 on the "engrossers," 417-418
 and government usury, 414
 and Jen-tsung, 299, 307, 350
 and Li Yüan-hao 李元昊, 315
 and Lü I-chien 呂義簡, 299
 and Shan-hsi, 311-312
 and Shen-tsung, 353, 357, 361
 and Shih Chieh 石介, 321
 and Ts'ai Hsiang 蔡襄, 298
 and Wei-chou4 渭州, 308
 and Ying-tsung, 323, 341
 Han Chiang 韓絳 (1012-88), 372, 373, 374, 375, 378-379, 386, 399, 450, 453, 469-470
 Han Chien 韓建, 47
 Han Chinese, 5, 823
 Han Chung-yen 韓忠彥 (1038-1109), 554, 563-564, 569, 570
 Han Ch'ung-yeh 韓崇業 (960-1001), 217
 Han Ch'ung-yün 韓重贊 (?-974), 217
 Han Hsiao-ho-ti 漢孝和帝. *See* Liu Ch'eng-chün 劉承鈞 (Han Hsiao-ho-ti 漢孝和帝), 955-68
 Han I 韓億, 299
 Han Kao-tsu 漢高祖 (r. 947-48). *See* Liu Chih-yüan 劉知遠
 Han-k'ou 漢口, 928
 Han Kuang-wu-ti 漢光武帝 (r. 25-57), 647, 689
 Han Kung 韓, 811
 Han-lin
 Academedian (*Han-lin hsüeb-shih* 翰林學士), 340, 341, 343, 371, 515, 527, 669, 757
 Academy, 361, 520
- Han-lin hsüeb-shih* 翰林學士. *See* Han-lin Academidian
 Han Ling-k'un 韓令坤 (923-68), 214, 216
 Han River 漢水, 4, 10, 29, 33, 922-923, 928
 Han Shih-chung 韓世忠 (1089-1151), 651, 654, 659, 665, 666, 669, 671, 675, 679, 682-684, 686
 Han Shih-ts'u 漢世祖 (r. 951-95). *See* Liu Ch'ung 劉崇
 Han Shih-tsung, 678
 Han T'o-chou 韓侂胄 (1152-1207, 1194-1207), 26, 31-32, 762-764, 772, 773, 776-777, 778, 793, 844, 897, 905
 as antithesis of Sung civil servant ideal, 783
 assassination of, 808-810, 836
 Chin demand for the head of, 806, 811-812
 and foreign policy, 790-795
 Han T'ung 韓通 (?-960), 211, 212
 Han Wei 韓維 (1017-98), 355, 361, 365, 424, 448, 449, 493, 520
 and Shen-tsung, 454
 Han Wen-ti, 690
 Han Wo 韓偓, 162
 Han Wu-ti 漢武帝 (r. 141-87 BCE), 731, 740
 Han-yang 漢陽, 928. *See also* Wu-han 武漢
 Han Yin-ti 漢隱帝 (r. 948-50). *See* Liu Ch'eng-yu 劉承祐
 Han Yüan-ching 韓元靖, 805
 handicraft, 174. *See also* specific craft
 Hang-chou 杭州, 28, 29, 140, 142, 173, 182, 625, 654, 696. *See also* Lin-an 臨安
 Hang-chou pa-tu 杭州八都. *See* Eight Battalions of Hang-chou
 Hao Ching 郝經, 870, 895-896, 926-927, 939

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1039

- Hao-chou 趙州, 126, 146, 813
 Hao Ch'u-chün 郝處俊, 522–523
 Hao-shui-ch'uan 好水川, 308–309, 420,
 550
 Harmonious Grain (*ho-ti* 和糴) levy, 893,
 895
 Hartwell, Robert M., 33, 35,
 589
 headman, neighborhood (*fang-cheng*
 坊正), 427
 Heavenly Texts, 271, 273, 275, 277,
 279
 heaven's mandate. *See* Mandate of
 Heaven
 heir and heir apparent (*t'ai-tzu* 太子),
 279, 336, 338, 753–754, 760,
 767, 771, 811, 834, 835, 836,
 915. *See also* adoption; “sons,”
 imperial (*huang-tzu* 皇子)
 Heng-chou2 橫州, 331
 Heng-shan 橫山, 475, 620
 Heng-shan Fort 橫山寨, 331
 hides, 684
 Highest Purity sect (*Shang-ch'ing*), 610,
 611
 Hino Kaisaburō, 178, 187
 hired service (service exemption, *mu-i*
 fu), 419–429, 437, 500–504
 fees (*mu-i* 募役). *See* service-exemption
 fees (*mein-i ch'ien*)
 policy (*mu-i* 募役), 591–593. *See also*
 service-exemption policy (*mien-i*
 fa 免役法)
 revived, 544–546
 historian. *See specific actor*
 histories (*shib*), 41
 dynastic, 41, 793
 private writing of, 692
 Historiography Institute (*kuo-shib kuan*
 國史館), 254, 276, 538
 Ho Ch'eng-chü 何承矩 (946–1006),
 263
Ho-chi chü 和劑局. *See* Public Pharmacies
 Ho-chien 河間, 637, 641
 Ho Chih-chung, 582
 Ho-chou 賀州, xi
 Ho-chou2 河州, xi
 Ho-chou3 和州, 706
 Ho-chou4 合州, 869–870, 918, 920,
 954
 Ho-chung 河中, 47, 61, 65, 108
 Ho Hsien 何鮮, 677
 Ho-huang, 23
 Ho-pei
 drill and review (*chiao-yieh* 敎閱) in,
 412
 emergency spending in, during Liao
 threat, 311
 independent governors of, 39, 43–44,
 59
 invaded by the Liao army, 262
 Investigation Commissioner, 60
 and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 122
 land tax remission in, 250
 and Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗, 70
 and Liao cavalry, 222, 249
 and Liao Mu-tsung 遼穆宗, 220
 redistributive reform in, 393
 in the second Sung-Chin war, 642,
 643
 service-exemption policy in,
 Sung concern with, 315
 Sung defense of, 309–310
 Ho-shan yüan, 660
 Ho-shang Plain (*Ho-shang yüan*), 795,
 800
 Ho-she-li Chih-chung 赫舍哩執中
 (d. 1213), 795, 819
 Ho-shih-lieh Chih-ning 累石烈志寧, 716,
 717, 718
 Ho Tan 何澹, 766, 778
 Ho Te-lun 賀德倫, 62
ho-ti 和糴. *See* Harmonious Grain levy
ho-tu 河渡. *See* ferry crossings,
 government
Ho-t'u 河圖. *See* Yellow River chart

- Ho-tung
 army defeated by Later Liang, 59
 and Chu Wen 朱溫, 48, 51, 53
 drill and review (*chiaoyüeh* 教閱) in, 412
 and Feng Tao 馮道, 61
 fortified, 551
 and Han Ch'i 韓琦, 307
 independent governors of, 44
 and Li K'o-ning 李克寧, 53–54
 and Li K'o-yung 李克用, 39
 and Li Shou-chen 李守貞, 109
 and Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗, 58, 70
 and Liu Chih-yüan 劉知遠, 104
 and Liu Ch'ung 劉崇, 112–114
 and Liu Jen-kung 劉仁恭, 47
 and Liu Shou-kuang 劉守光, 60
 North, 818
 plundered by A-pao-chi 阿保機, 64
 recovered, 551
 redistributive reform in, 393
 in the second Sung-Chin war, 640, 642
 strategic importance of, 42–43
 Sung concern with, 315
- Ho-tung circuit 河東路, 11, 14
 holiday, national, 282
 Honan 河南, 34, 42, 43, 46, 47, 60, 63, 66
 Hopei 河北, 48, 284
 horses and horsemen, 77, 95, 221, 251, 252, 253, 351, 471, 684, 792, 862, 864, 928. *See also* cavalry
 household (*bu-ma* 戶馬), 471
 land in return for (*chi-t'ien*
mu-ma 紿田牧馬), 471
pao-chia 保甲, 471
pao-ma 保馬 (mutual security horse
 pasturage), 471, 494
 procuring, 27
 hospital network, state-funded, 597
 hostages. *See specific actor*
 Hostel for Imperial Clansmen (*Mu-ch'in*
chai 睞親宅), 296
- hou* (empress). *See specific actor*
 Hou Shu-hsien 候叔獻, 393
 household, 227, 232, 409
 on duty (*ying-tang men-hu* 應當門戶), 437
 grading system, 402, 416, 419–421, 500, 544–545, 546. *See also*
 service-exemption fees (*mein-i*
ch'ien)
 self-registration (*shou-sbib*
fa 手實法), 452
 guest (*k'o-hu* 客戶), 394
 lower-grade (*hsia-hu* 下戶), 501
 regulations (*chia-fa*), 461
 resident (*chu-hu* 主戶), 394
 tenant (*tien-hu*), 191, 192
 upper-grade (*shang-hu* 上戶), 501
 Hsi-an 西安, 47, 551. *See also*
 Ching-ch'ao fu 京兆府
Hsi-ch'eng so 西城所. *See* Western Wall
 Bureau
hsia-ch'ien 息錢 (net returns), 433
 Hsi-ching 西京路, 818
 Hsi-chou 隰州 (Hui-chou 徽州), 61, 625
 Hsi-ho 熙河, 23, 468, 549
 Hsi-ho-chou 西和州, 795, 853. *See also*
 Min-chou
 Hsi Hsia 西夏, 4, 16, 17, 22, 27, 33, 206, 251–254, 268, 272, 352, 354–355, 818
 Duke of, 251
 Hui-tsung's campaigns against, 614
 rapprochement with, 505–508
 Shao-sheng 紹聖 offensives against, 548–551
 1081–83 war with, 505
 war with, 300–316, 348
 Hsi-ning2 西寧, Tsinghai province, 26, 466
 Hsi-p'ing, Prince of, 251
 Hsi-tsung 熙宗 (r. 1135–49), 677, 682, 688, 704

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1041

- Hsia
 Emperor of the Great (*Ta Hsia*
huang-ti 大夏皇帝), 302
 King of, 251
 Hsia Chen 夏震, 808, 836, 922
 Hsia-chou 夏州, 251, 473
 rebellion at (910), 54
 Hsia-hsi-chou 下溪州, 329
 Hsia Hui-tsung 夏惠宗 (r. 1068–86). *See*
 Wei-ming Ping-ch'ang 壴名秉常
 Hsia Shih-lin 夏十林, 940
 Hsia Sung 夏竦 (985–1051), 282, 285,
 290, 303, 321
hsiang. *See* canton
 Hsiang-chou 襄州, 54, 95, 180, 268, 298
 Hsiang-chou2 相州, 104–105
hsiang-chün 廂軍. *See* army, prefectural
 troops
hsiang-hu ya-ch'ien 鄉戶衙前. *See* supply
 master posts
 Hsiang Min-chung 向敏中, 346
hsiang-ping 鄉兵. *See* militia, local
 Hsiang River 湘水, 5, 178
 Hsiang-shan 象山, on an overland trade
 route, 182
hsiang shu-shou 鄉書手. *See* canton scribe
 Hsiang-yang 襄陽, 674, 795, 827, 865,
 866, 918, 920, 921, 922–923,
 927, 928
 Hsiao, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*
 皇后), 249, 262–266, 270
Hsiao-ching 孝經. *See* Book of filial piety
 Hsiao Han 蕭翰, 103, 105
hsiao-hsing 小姓. *See* names, small
 Hsiao T'a-lan 蕭撻覽 (?–1004), 266. *See*
 also Hsiao, Dowager Empress
 Hsiao T'e-mo 蕭特默, 310
 Hsiao-tsung 孝宗 (Chao Shen, 1127–94,
 r. 1162–89), 31, 708, 913. *See*
 also Chao Po-ts'ung; Chao Shen
 (Hsiao-tsung 孝宗, 1127–94,
 r. 1162–69); Chao Yüan-fen
 abdication of, 737
 accomplishments of, 710, 754–755
 administrative and financial control
 of, 747
 ambition to secure former territory,
 736
 crisis over burial site for, 775–776
 and defensive foreign policy, 732–737
 devotion to his father, 752
 effect of death of Kao-tsung 高宗 on,
 756
 1163 campaign of, 32
 favorites of, 726–728
 financial administration of, 728–731,
 748–752
 and financial reform, 730–731
 and foreign relations after 1174,
 738–755
 frugality of, 712, 730–731, 749
 inner court of, 726–728
 and his ministers, 721–725
 and Kao-tsung 高宗 after abdication,
 711
 Hsiao T'ung 簫統 (Prince Chao-ming
 昭明太子, 501–53), 255. *See also*
 Prince Chao-ming 昭明太子
 Hsieh, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*
 皇太后), 928, 929–930,
 934–936, 941, 945, 946, 957.
 See also Hsieh Ch'iao 謢喬
 Hsieh, Empress, 771. *See also* Hsieh
 Ch'iao 謢喬; Hsieh, Dowager
 Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇后)
 Hsieh2, Dowager Empress (*huang*
 t'ai-hou 皇太后), 809
 Hsieh Ch'iao 謢喬, Empress (1210–83),
 873. *See also* Hsieh, Dowager
 Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇后);
 Hsieh, Empress
 Hsieh Ching-wen 謢景溫, 371, 377
 Hsieh Fang-shu 謢方叔, 880, 886–887,
 888, 892, 893, 904
 Hsieh Kuo-jan 謢郭然, 742
 Hsieh Liang 謢亮, 659
 Hsieh Shen-fu 謢深甫, 778, 781, 789,
 930

- hsien* 縣. *See* county
- Hsien-jen, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后), 687, 688, 708
- Hsien-t'ung 咸通 era (860–73), 153
- Hsin, Prince (d. 1140), 663
- Hsin-ch'eng, 928
- Hsin Ch'i-chi 辛棄疾 (1140–1207), 792, 793, 899
- Hsin-chou 新州, 87
- Hsin-chou₂ 信州, 625
- Hsin-chou₃ 忻州, 298, 299
- hsin-fa* 新法. *See* New Policies
- Hsin-hsiang 新鄉, 63
- Hsin T'ang-shu* 新唐書 (*New T'ang documents*), 153
- hsin-ts'ai ch'ien* 薪菜錢. *See* cash, sustenance
- Hsing, Empress, 687
- Hsing-ch'ing, 551
- Hsing-chou 邢州, 72
- Hsing-chou₂ 興州, 473
- Hsing-chou₃ 興州, 803
- hsing-chün ssu-ma* 行軍司馬. *See* adjutant
- Hsing-mi, 147–148
- Hsing Shu 邢恕, 377, 479–480, 565 and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung, 542 plot to depose Chao Hsü₂ 趙煦, 486
- Hsing-yüan 興元, 157
- Hsiu-chou 秀州 (Chia-hsing 嘉興), 626
- Hsiung Pen 熊本, 456
- Hsü Chi-chih 許及之 (d. 1201), 778
- Hsü Chih-hsun 徐知訓, 166
- Hsü Chih-kao 徐知誥, 161, 163, 166–167, 189, 200. *See also* Li Pien
- Hsü Ching-t'ung 徐景通, 167
- Hsü-chou 徐州, 795
- Hsü-chou₂ 許州, 55
- Hsü Hsi 徐禱, 476–477
- Hsü Huai-te 許懷德, 305
- Hsü I 許奕 (1170–1219), 803, 811, 817
- Hsü Kuo 許國 (d. 1225), 826, 847–848
- Hsü Meng-hsin 徐夢莘 (1126–1207), 558
- Hsü Pu 蕃卜, 833
- Hsü Tzu-chih t'ung-chien ch'ang-pien* 繼資治通鑑長編, 526, 558
- Hsü Wen 徐溫, 66, 161, 165–167
- Hsü Wen₂, 666
- Hsü Ying-lung 徐應龍, 911
- Hsü Ying-piao 徐應鑣, 945
- Hsü Yüan-chieh 徐元杰, 883
- Hsüan-chou 宣州, 138
- hsüan-fu shih* 宣撫使. *See* Pacification Commissioner (*ching-liueh an-fu shih* 經略安撫使)
- Hsüan-hui yüan* 宣徽院. *See* Court of Palace Attendants
- Hsüan-jen 宣仁, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后, r. 1085–93), 25, 480–482, 519, 522–524. *See also* Kao, Empress; Kao, Lady opposition to reforms, 484 and the New Policies, 561
- Hsüan-jen 宣仁 regency (1085–93), 484–531
- Hsüan-te Gate incident (1073), 455
- Hsüan Tseng 宣縉, 898
- Hstüeh Ch'ing, 664
- Hsüeh Hsiang 薛向 (1016–81), 354, 377, 403, 449
- Hsüeh Wen-yü 薛文遇, 84
- hsün-chien* 巡檢. *See* inspector, military
- Hsün-tzu 荔子 (fl. 298–238 BCE), 389
- hu-chang* 戶長. *See* household chief
- Hu Chin-ch'en 胡晉臣 (d. 1193), 766
- Hu-chou 湖州, 939
- Chao Hung's exile to, 839 1225 rebellion at, 840–843
- Hu Ch'üan, 679, 680

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1043

- Hu Ch'ün, 713
hu-fa shan-shen 護法善神. *See* “Divine Protector”
 Hu Hung 胡宏, 784
hu-ma 戶馬. *See* horses, household
 Hu Meng-yü 胡夢昱, 843
hu-pu 戶部. *See* Ministry of Finance
hu-pu ssu 戶部司. *See* Census Bureau
 Hu San-hsing 胡三省, 182, 196
 Hu Shun-chih 胡舜陟 (1083–1143), 446
 Hu Su 胡宿, after Jen-tsung, 337
 Hu Tan 胡旦 (*chin shih* 978), 260
 Hu Tsai-hsing 扈再興, 827, 829
 Hu Tsung-yu 胡宗愈 (1029–94), 375
 Hua-chou 華州, 47
 Hua-chou2 滑州, 66, 91, 283
 Hua-chou3 化州, 542
Hua-bsiieh. *See* School of Painting
Hua-shih wang 花石綱. *See* “flower and rock network”
 Huai 淮, Chia Ssu-tao 賈似道 and defense of, 918
huai-jou 懷柔. *See* “way of softness”
 Huai-nan
 campaign, 127–128
 and Chao K'uang-ning 趙匡凝, 50
 and Chou Shih-tsung 周世宗, 201
 drought in, 118
 and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 125
 and the Later Shu, 124
 local emperors in, 53
 on an overland trade route, 182
 and P'ang Hsün 龐勣, 137
 part of Chiang-Huai 江淮, 143
 and Sun Ju 孫儒, 149
 and Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 43, 48, 50, 53, 134, 146–147, 178
 Huai River 淮河, 4, 10, 29, 43, 124, 222
 Huai-te Army 懷德, 126
 Huai-yüan, 308
 Huan-ch'ing, 23, 301, 312, 314, 469,
 551
- Huan-chou 豪州, 87
 Huan-sh'ing, 549
 Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 134–135, 138–140, 147, 148, 150, 156–157, 172
 and Ch'ang-an 長安, 42, 66
 in Ch'ang-n, 39
 and Ch'in Tsung-chüan, 43
 and Chu Wen 朱溫, 43, 49, 55
 defeated by Li K'o-yung 李克用, 39
 and the Eight Battalions, 142
 and Kao P'ien 高駢, 144
 rebellion (875–84), 40, 146, 206, 251
 and the Southern Han, 153
 and Szechwan, 155
Huang-ch'eng ssu 皇城司. *See* Capital Security Office
 Huang Ch'ien-shan 黃潛善 (d. 1129), 649
huang-chih 皇姪 (imperial nephews). *See* adoption
 Huang-chou 黃州, 928, 933
 Huang-chou2 潼州, 617
 Huang-fu Pin 皇甫斌, 806
 Huang-fu Yü 皇甫遇, 95
 Huang Hsia-fu (?-c. 1006), 183
huang-k'ao 皇考. *See* “imperial deceased father”
 Huang K'uang-chung, 11, 12, 13
 Huang Lü 黃履, 463, 537
huang-nü 皇女 (imperial daughters). *See* specific actor
huang-po 皇伯. *See* “deceased imperial paternal uncle”
 Huang Shang 黃裳 (1146–94), 761, 774, 777, 779
 Huang Shih-mi 黃師密, 331
 Huang Shih-yung 黃師雍, 882
 Huang-shui Valley 潼水
huang t'ai-fei 皇太妃 (imperial mother, dowager consort). *See* specific actor
huang t'ai-hou 皇太后 (dowager empress). *See* specific actor

- Huang-t'ai-hou i-chih* 皇太后儀制. *See* *Compendium of rituals and paraphernalia of the Dowager Empress*
- Huang Ti, 798
- Huang T'ing-chien 黃庭堅, 575
- Huang Ts'ung 黃從, 951
- Huang Tu 黃度 (1138-1213), 777, 780, 812
- huang-tzu* 皇子. *See* "sons," imperial
- Huang Wei 黃瑊, 331
- Huang Yung 黃鏞, 940
- hui-fu* 恢復 (recovery or reconquest of lost territory). *See* irredentism
- Hui-ling, Prince, 704-706. *See also* Wan-yen Liang 完顏亮 (Prince)
- Hai-ling 海陵王, r. 1149-61)
- Hui-tsung 徽宗 (Chao Chi 趙佶, 1082-1135, r. 1100-26), 26, 27, 29, 30, 551, 575, 644, 677. *See also* Chao Chi 趙佶 (Hui-tsung, 1128-1135, r. 1100-1126)
- abdication of, 636
- death of, in captivity, 643
- enthronement controversy of, 561-562
- expansionist border policies of, 617
- extravagance of, 602-606
- historiographic issues surrounding, 556-637
- popular uprisings during the reign of, 622-627
- promoting Taoist religion and ritual, 583, 606-614
- stripped of imperial status, 642
- and Taoism, 602
- traditional historiography of, 602
- bui-tzu* 會子. *See* currency, paper
- bui-yao* 會要. *See* *Compendium of the institutions of the dynasty*
- Hunan 湖南, 10, 133, 148, 150, 154, 178, 180, 199-200, 227, 466
- migration to, 700
- Hung-ao tsei* 紅臘賊. *See* Red-jacket bandits
- Hung-chin* 紅巾. *See* Red Turbans
- Hung-chou 洪州, 130, 147
- Hung-lu ssu* 鴻臚寺. *See* Court of State Ceremonial
- Hung Mai 洪邁 (1123-1202), 723
- Hung-shou2, 549
- Hung T'ien-hsi 洪天錫, 888, 904, 905
- Hupei 湖北, migration to, 700
- Hupei modern province, 10, 48, 54
- Hymes, Robert P., 35, 589, 612
- I-chin-kuan 益津關, 129
- I-chou 易州, 632
- I-chou2 益州, 223, 257
- I-chou3 宜州, 329
- i-chiin* 義軍. *See* army, "Righteous"
- I-hsüeh* 醫學. *See* School of Medicine
- i-i chih-i* 以夷制夷. *See* playing barbarians off against each other
- i-ko* 倚閣. *See* deferrals, payment
- i-kuan chih tsu* 一貫之族. *See* families of great officials
- i-p'ei* 抑配. *See* loans, forced
- I-shih t'ang* 議事堂. *See* Policy Deliberation Hall
- I-Ting, 47, 59, 60, 65
- independent governors of, 44
- I-tu 益都, 848
- i-yung* 義勇. *See* army, of righteous braves
- illness. *See* specific actor or malady
- impeachment. *See* specific actor
- Imperial Ancestral Temple (*T'ai-miao* 太廟), 697, 887
- Imperial Bodyguard (*shih-wei ch'in-chiin* 侍衛親軍), 75, 82
- Imperial Bureau of Music (*Chiao-fang* 敎坊), 697
- Imperial Clan, expanding institutions of the, 600-602
- Imperial Clan Academy (*Tsung-hsüeh* 宗學), 883, 889

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1045

- Imperial Elite (*Pan-chib* 班直), 234
- Imperial encyclopedia of the T'ai-p'ing bsing-kuo* 太平興國 era (*T'ai-ping yü-lan*), 254–255
- “imperial father,” 94. *See also* adoption
- Imperial Guard
- and Ching Yen-kuang 景延廣, 97
 - and Fan Yen-kuang 范延光, 90
 - and Kao Wei, 114
 - and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 120–121
 - and Kuo Wei 郭威, 118
 - and Li Ssu-chao 李嗣昭, 87
 - and Liu Ch'eng-yu 劉承祐, 107
 - and Liu Chih-yüan 劉知遠, 107
 - and Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源, 75
 - and Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 91, 92
 - and Te-kuang 德光, 102, 104
 - and Tu Ch'ung-wei 杜重威 and Li Shou-chen 李守貞, 101
- Imperial Library, 254, 294
- Imperial Provisioning Bureau (*Ying-feng chü*), 604, 624, 625, 626
- Imperial Seminar (*ching-yen* 經筵), 282
- Imperial Tomb, commissioner of the, 280
- Imperial Treasury, 749
- Imperial Treasury of Awards (*yü-ch'ien chuang-kuan chi-shang k'u* 御前樞管激賞庫), 751
- Imperial University (*T'ai-hsüeh* 太學), 319, 694
- curricula under Northern and Southern Sung, 901
 - demonstration at, protesting Chao Ju Yü's dismissal, 781
 - pacifism among students at, 829
 - student demands for Ch'iao Hsing-chien's execution, 821
 - and *Tao-hsüeh* 道學, 897–906
 - and Ting Ta-ch'üan, 889
- Imperially approved synthesis of books and illustrations past and present*
- (*Ch'in-ting ku-chin yu-shu chi-cheng*, 1726–28), 255
- impiety, filial, 784
- imports. *See specific commodity*
- incense, commercial permits for sale of, 430
- infantry, 218
- infidelity. *See specific actor*
- informants, 219
- Inner Asia
- marker of state formation in, 16
 - state building in, 10th to 13th centuries, 15–19
- insanity. *See specific actor*
- insignia, T'ang imperial dynasty, 65
- inspector (*hsin-chien* 巡檢), prefectural military, 410
- Institute for the Veneration of Literature (*Ch'ung-wen yüan* 崇文院), 376
- insurrections. *See rebellions. See also specific incident, instigator, or location*
- integrity. *See specific actor*
- intendants
- circuit (*chien-szu* 鹽司), 383, 748
 - fiscal (*chuan-yüen shih* 轉運使), 231–233, 312, 379, 424
 - judicial (*t'i tien bsing-yü*), 380
 - military (*shuai-ch'en* 軍臣), 232, 748, 752
- for military drill and review (*t'i-chü chiao-yüeh-shih*), 413
- interest, 396, 432, 497, 504. *See also Green Sprouts*
- Green Sprouts, 546
- and the guild exemption fees, 547
 - hired service, 592
 - on State Trade loans, 547
 - surplus emergency fee surtax (*k'uan-sheng ch'ien* 寬剩錢), 592
- interregnum. *See specific actor or event*
- Investigating Censor (*chien-ch'a yü-shih* 監察御史), 495, 517, 680

- Investigation and Prosecution Bureau (*Su-li so*), 540–541. *See also*
Su-li so
- iron, 202, 225
- Iron Hawks (*t'ie-yao*), 477
- irredentism, 23, 24–25, 26, 28, 263,
 353, 457, 464, 549, 858
- irrigation, 172–174, 208, 729. *See also*
 water control
- ivory, 184, 186
- Jao-chou 饒州, 920, 933, 937
- Japan, 253
- jen-chu chih ch'iian* 人主之權. *See* imperial
 prerogative
- Jen Fu 任福, 308–309
- jen-hsia* 仁俠. *See* chivalry
- Jen Huan 任圜, 73, 75, 77, 78
- Jen-to-ch'üan 仁多川, 621
- Jen-tsung 仁宗 (Chao Shou-i, Chao Chen
 趙禎, 1010–63, r. 1022–3), 25,
 31, 279, 338, 342, 347,
 350–351, 354, 689
- administration problems during reign
 of, 326–328
- imperial women of, 334–335
- southern conflicts during the reign of,
 329
- Jen-tsung shih-lu* 仁宗實錄. *See* Jen-tsung
 veritable record
- Jen-tsung veritable record* (*Jen-tsung shih-lu*
 仁宗實錄), 339
- jewels, 303
- jib-li* 日曆. *See* Daily Calendar
- Ju-chou 儒州, 87
- ju-chung fa* 入中法. 302. *See also* exchange
 “provisioning,” grain
- Ju-hsieh* 儒學. *See* Confucianism
- Judicial Control Office (*Shen-hsing yüan*
 審刑院), 240
- jujube, 440
- Jung-chou 融州, 328
- jung-kuan* 冤官. *See* officials,
 supernumerary
- K'ai feng, 30, 55, 90, 105, 264, 682,
 820, 852, 855, 858, 862, 879.
See also Pien-chou 汴州
- as capital, 94
- and the Chin, 646
- drought in, as portent, 499
- by 895, 42
- fall of (1127), 28
- during the Five Dynasties, 38
- fortifications of, 234
- and Han Ch'i 韓琦, 307
- hired service policy in, 440
- and the Khitan 契丹, 20
- and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 121
- and Kuo Wei 郭威, 110, 118
- as Later Chou capital, 209
- and Li Shou-chen 李守貞, 108
- and Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗, 65, 67
- and Liu Ch'eng-yu 劉承祐, 107
- and the Mongols, 34
- mutiny at (c. 916), 63
- pao-chia* 保甲 regulations for,
 408–414
- and Pien-chou 汴州, 52
- sacked by Jurchen 女真, 615
- in the second Sung-Chin war, 641
- seige of, 637
- service-exemption policy in, 402
- state trade bureau in, 430–431
- state trade in, 405, 406
- as the Sung capital, 203
- surrendered by Chin, 677
- and T'ai-tsu 太祖, 219
- as T'ai-tsu's capital, 222
- and Te-kuang 德光, 102, 104
- and Wang Yen-chang 王彥章, 66
- water control in, 283
- K'ai-hsi 開禧 war (1206–07), 32,
 789–795, 824, 852, 908
- k'ai yen-lu* 開言路. *See* remonstrance,
 “opening channels of
- K'ai-yüan ssu-pu lu*, 294

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1047

- Kan-chou 贛州, 147. *See also* Ch'ien-chou
 虔州
- Kan-chou² 甘州, 300
- Kan River 贛, 5, 178
- Kang-chou 磬州, 951
- K'ang, Prince, 29, 637, 639. *See also*
 Chao Kou; Chou Kou (Prince
 K'ang); Sung Kao-tsung 宋高宗
- K'ang-chou 康州, 332
- K'ang I-ch'eng 康義誠, 82, 83
- K'ang Lü, 651
- Kansu Corridor, 17, 22, 301
- Kansu modern province, xi, 79, 252,
 300, 352, 354, 466
- Kansu-Tsinghai Highlands, 22
- Kao, Empress, 480. *See also* Hsüan-jen
- Kao, Lady, 338. *See also* Hsüan-jen
- Kao Chi-ch'ang 高季昌, 148, 173, 181,
 183, 198
- Kao Chi-chung 高繼中 (r. 948–60), 202
- Kao Chi-hsing 高季興 (Kao Chi-ch'ang
 高季昌, Prince of Nan-p'ing 南平),
 67, 79
- Kao Ch'i 高琪 (d. 1220), 830
- Kao Huai-cheng, 331
- Kao Huai-te 高懷德, 217
- Kao Jo-na 高若訥, 323
- Kao-liang River 高梁河, 248
- Kao P'ien 高駢, 144, 145, 170
- Kao-p'ing 高平, 120, 208, 211, 220–221
 Khitan-Northern Han invasions of
 (954 and 960), 11
- Kao-t'ing Mountain 墩亭山, 940
- Kao Ts'un-yü, 473–476
- Kao-tsung 高宗 (Chao Kou, 1107–87,
 r. 1127–62), 29–30, 644–709,
 762. *See also* K'ang, Prince
 abdication of, 707, 708
 admiration of past emperors, 689–690
 and court ceremonies, 697
 effect of death on Hsiao-tsung 孝宗, 752
 and his councilors, 672
 and medicine, 707
 restoration of (1129), 652
- Kao Ts'ung-hui 高從誨, 104, 106
- Kao Ts'ung-meı 高從誨 (r. 929–48), 183,
 196
- Kao Ying-sun 高應松, 944
- Kao Yü 高郁, 174, 176, 180, 181
k'ao 考. *See* “deceased father”
- kei-t'ien mu-jen* 紿田募人. *See* land, in
 return for service
- Ken-yüeh* 艮嶽. *See* Northeast
 Marchmount
- keng-bsü fa* 更戍法. *See* system, rotation
- Keng Nan-chung, 641
- khagden. *See* khan
- khan, 15
- Khitan 契丹 (*Ch'i-tan*), 4, 10, 20,
 27–28, 44, 60, 61, 103, 206,
 209, 221, 226, 354, 465
- Khitan Liao empire, 12, 14, 16
 Hui-tsung's campaigns against, 615
- Khubilai khan 忽必烈汗 (Hu-pi-lieh, r.
 126–94), 17, 869, 870, 872,
 895, 896, 897, 920, 927–928,
 937, 938, 939, 942, 954, 955
- Kiangsi modern province, 130, 143,
 149, 178
- Kiangsu modern province, xi, 34
- king
 commandery (*chünn-wang* 郡王),
 158
 nation (*kuo-wang* 國王), 158, 189
- kinsman. *See* clansmen
- klaghan, 870
- Ko Huai-min 葛懷敏, 314
- Ko-men ssu* 關門司. *See* Office of Audience
 Ceremonies
- Ko Pi 葛邲, 766
- k'o-hu* 客戶. *See* household, guest
- Ko T'ien-ssu 葛天思, 945
- Kokonor Lake. *See* Ch'ing-hai (Kokonor)
 Lake
- Korea, 33
- Korean Relations Institute (*T'ung-wen
 kuan* 同文館), 541–543
- Kory (Korea), 863, 866

1048

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Koryo, 250, 253
 Kou-lung Ju-yüan 句龍如淵 (1093-1154), 679, 680, 681
 K'ou Chun 寇準 (961-1023), 264, 269, 270, 277, 278, 280
 Köchü 庫春, 863-864
 Köten 庫端 (K'u-tuan), 863-864
 Kracke, Edward A., Jr., 374
 Ku Fan, 420
ku-i-fa 雇役法. *See* mu-i 募役
 Ku-ku-lung, 620
 Ku Lin 顧臨, 516
 Ku-ssu-lo 唸廓囉 (997-1065), 300, 303
ku-wen 古文 (ancient style of writing), 319
 Ku Yen-hui 顧彥暉, 157
 Kua-chou 瓜州, 948
 K'uai-chi 會稽. *See* Shao-hsing 紹興
kuan-ch'a shih 觀察使. *See* governors, civil; surveillance commissioner
 Kuan-chung 關中, 47, 50, 54, 107, 108
kuan-k'o shih 館客士. *See* scholars in residence
 Kuan Li 關, 772
 Kuan-nan 關南 (south of the passes), 263, 266, 267, 268
 Kuan Yü, 686
k'uan-sheng ch'ien 寬剩錢. *See* surplus emergency fee surtax
Kuang-ch'in chai 廣觀宅. *See* Hostel for Imperial Clansmen
 Kuang-chou 廣州, 134, 153, 154, 177, 184, 185, 227, 332. *See also* Canton; Canton (Kuang-chou 廣州)
 Kuang-chou 廣州 (modern Canton), 949, 950, 951
 Kuang-chou2 光州, 124, 448
 Kuang-hua 光化, 795
kuang-hui ts'ang 廣惠倉. *See* Universal Charity Granaries
 Kuang-i 光義 (T'ai-tsung 太宗), 242-260
 Kuang-ling 廣陵, 165-166. *See also* Yang-chou 楊州
 Kuang-nan circuits 廣南路, 955
 East, 5, 328-329
 West, 5, 328, 329, 331
 Kuang-te 光德, 933, 937
 Kuang-tsung 光宗 (Chao Tun, 1147-1200, r. 1189-94), 31, 913. *See also* Chao Tun
 abdication of, 772
 and Hsiao-tsung 孝宗, 760, 767-768, 785
 and medications, 759
 reasons for opposition to, 769-771
 reign of, 757-772
 Kuang-tung, xi
 Kuang-yüan-chou 廣源州, 331
kuei-ching jen. *See* refugees
 Kuei-chou 歸州, 10, 147
 Kuei-chou2 婁州, 87
 Kuei-chou3 桂州 (Kuei-lin 桂林), 153, 332
 Kuei-lin 桂林, 153. *See also* Kuei-yang
 桂陽
 Kuei-yang 桂陽, 940. *See also* Kuei-lin
 桂林
 Kuei-yang chien 桂陽監, 329
 K'uei-chou, 147, 328
 K'uei-chou2 變州, 954
 K'un-lun Pass 崑崙關, 333
kung 貢. *See* tribute, annual
kung 宮. *See* Taoism, temples and monasteries of
 Kung-chou 龔州, 331
 Kung Kuai 鞍夬, 564, 565
 Kung Mao-liang 龔茂良, 741-742
kung-shou 弓手. *See* yamen police for the arrest of thieves
 Kung-ti 恭帝, 947. *See* Chao Hsien 趙縣 (1271-1323)
kung-t'ien 公田. *See* Public Fields measure
Kung-t'ien so 公田所. *See* Public Lands Bureau
 Kung-tsung 恭宗 (Chao Hsien 趙縣, 1271-1323, r. 1274-76). *See* Chao Hsien 趙縣 (Ying-kuo

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1049

- kung, Kung-ti 恭帝,
 Kung-tsung, 1271–1323,
 r. 1274–76)
- kung-wu ssu-shang* 貢物私商. *See* “tributary goods and private merchandise”
- K'ung Ch'ien 孔謙, 69, 70, 76
- K'ung Tao-fu 孔道輔, 292
- K'ung Wen-chung 孔文仲 (1038–88),
 365, 511, 519
 banishment of, 543
- K'ung Wu-chung, 365
- K'ung Yen-chih, 365
- K'ung Yen-chou 孔彥舟 (1107–61),
 665
- Kuo, Empress, 289, 294, 334
- Kuo2, Empress (1126–56), 758, 759
- Kuo, Lady, 292–293
- Kuo, Pure Consort, 293
- Kuo Chih-chang, 549
- Kuo Ch'ung 郭崇 (908–65), 214,
 215
- Kuo Ch'ung-t'ao 郭崇綱, 69, 71–72
- Kuo Jung 郭榮 (Ch'ai Jung 柴榮, Chou Shih-tsung 周世宗, 954–59),
 118. *See also* Ch'ai Jung 柴榮
- Kuo Kao 郭杲 (d. 1200), 798
- Kuo K'uei 郭逵, 345
- kuo-kung* 國公. *See* Duke of State
- Kuo-le-chi (d. 1219), 822
- kuo-shih* 國史. *See* state history, dynastic history
- Kuo-shih kuan* 國史館. *See* Historiography Institute
- Kuo Tsung-hsün 郭宗訓 (Chou Kung-ti 周恭帝, 959), 130, 211. *See also* Chou Kung-ti 周恭帝 (r. 956)
- Kuo-tzu chien* 國子監. *See* Directorate of Education
- Kuo Tzu-i 郭子儀, 69
- kuo-wang* 國王. *See* king, nation; nation king, prince of the state; prince of state
- Kuo Wei 郭威 (Chou T'ai-tsui 周太祖, r. 951–54), 5, 109–112, 119,
- 197, 200, 207, 210–211. *See also* Chou T'ai-tsui 周太祖 (r. 951–54)
 ancestral shrine of, 118
 contributions of, in strengthening bureaucratic governance, 11
 Kuo Yao-shih 郭蘿師, 636
- Kuo-yung fang* 國用房. *See* Bureau of State Expenditure
- Kwangtung modern province, 5, 133, 209, 224, 226
- Kweichow modern province, 226
- labor service (*fu-i* 夫役), 393
- lady, palace. *See* women, palace
- Lai-chou 萊州, 178
 on an overland trade route, 182
- Lake T'ai 太湖, 174
- Lan-chou 蘭州, 473
- land, 136, 208. *See also* “engrossers” and engrossment (*chien-ping* 兼并)
 accumulation, by the wealthy, 892
 development and irrigation. *See* agricultural lands and water conservancy policy (*nung-t'ien shui-li fa* 農田水利法)
- distribution, 128
- government (*kuan-t'ien*), 601,
 699
- government, fiscal rights to, 424
- government-leased (*ying-t'ien* 賦田), 798
- grants of, 699
- “in return for service” policy (*kai-t'ien mu-jen*), 423, 451
- increasing arable, 699–701
- management (*ying-t'ien* 賦田), 699
- owned by government schools, 700
- public (*kung-t'ien* 公田), 627
- reclamation, 318
- recovery of lost (*hui-fu* 恢復), 720
- state-run farms (*t'un-t'ien* 屯田), 699
- survey, 128, 893

- land (*cont.*)
 “survey measure” (*ching-chieh fa* 經界法), 701
 tax. *See* tax, land
- Land of Heavenly Abundance, 223
- Land Survey and Equitable Tax policy (*fang-t'ien chün-shui fa* 方田均稅法), 393, 496–497
 abolition of, 579, 582
 restoration of, under Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 590–591
- Lao Tzu 老子, 271
- Later Chin dynasty (936–47), 4, 38
- Later Chou dynasty (951–59), 4–5, 38, 112, 207
 armies of the, 219
 assault on the north (958–59), 129–132
 increase in prefectures of, 12
 and Northern Han (951–54), 112–119
- Later Han dynasty (947–50), 38, 689
- Later Liang dynasty (907–23), 5, 38, 188, 206
 between 907–15, 52–61
- Later Shu dynasty (934–65), 10, 123, 134, 160, 163, 209, 220
 965 campaign against, 14
 prefectures in, 12
- Later T'ang dynasty (923–36), 38, 66, 164
 establishment of, 67–74
 first challenge to authority of, 79
- Lau Nap-yin, 11, 12, 13
- law. *See specific law or measure*
- law codes, 57, 128
 of Chu Wen 朱溫 (910), 68
 of the T'ang dynasty, of Chu Wen 朱溫 (910), 68
- Law Codes of the Great Chou (Ta Chou bsing-t'ung* 大周刑統), 126
- leaders, patrol (*bsün-chien* 巡檢), 301
- learning, Szechwanese, 512
- “Learning of the Way” (*Tao-hsüeh* 道學).
See *Tao-hsüeh* 道學
- leather, 117
- legal system, 116, 123. *See also* law codes
- legitimacy, 52–55, 64, 81, 189, 900–901, 949
 and Chao Yün, 837
 dynastic, 772
 and the Hsi Hsia 西夏, 619
 of the Hsüan-jen 遷人 regency, 523
 importance of
 to Chang Pang-ch'ang 張邦昌, 647
 to Chao Ch'i 趙禕, 914–915
 to Chu Wan, 52–55, 188
 to Kao-tsung 高宗, 650, 687
 to Kuang-i 光義, 243–244
 to T'ai-ts'u 太祖, 213
 and Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 89–92
 symbolic, 57, 65–66, 116, 128
- Lei Yün-kung 雷允恭 (?–1022), 280–281
- letters of state, Chin, 738, 739
- Levine, Ari D., 24
- Li 李, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后), 291
- Li 李, Empress (960–1004), 260
- Li2 李, Empress (1145–1200), 759–760, 761–762, 767, 771, 772, 773
- Li 李, Lady, 279, 289
- Li Ch'ang 李常, 434
- Li Ch'ang-ling 李昌齡 (937–1008), 260
- Li Chen 李振, 48, 57
- Li Ch'eng 李成, 665–666, 674
- Li-chi* 禮記. *See Book of rites*
- Li Chi 李稷, 452, 475, 477
- Li Chi-chi 李繼岌, 71, 73
- Li Chi-ch'ien 李繼遷 (?–1004), 252
- Li Chi-p'eng 李繼捧, 251–252
- Li-chib chii* 禮制局. *See Department of State Affairs, Ritual Regulations Office*
- Li Chin-ch'üan 李金全, 95
- Li Ching 李璟 (r. 943–61), 124–125, 127, 198–200, 201

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1051

- Li Ch'ing-ch'en, 533
 and palace examination, 533
- Li Ch'ing-ling, 260
- Li Ch'iung 麗瓊, 670, 676, 677
- Li-chou₂ 利州, 157
- Li-chou₃ 黎州, 833
- Li-chou₄ 遼州, 657
- Li Ch'un-nien 李椿年 (d. 1159), 701
- Li Ch'ung-chin 李重進 (?-960), 114, 118, 124, 131, 214-215, 216, 229, 245
- Li Ch'ung-chü 李崇矩, 236
- Li Ch'üan 李全 (d. 1231), 34-35, 824-827, 829, 840, 841, 847-852, 853, 872, 896
 and Mongols, 848-849
- Li Fu2 李福, 827, 849
- Li Hao-i 李好義 (d. 1207), 802, 803
- Li Heng 李, 949, 950, 955
- Li Hsiang 李祥, 897
- Li Hsien 李憲, 473-476, 507
- Li Hsien-chung 李顯忠, 717
- Li Hsin-ch'u'an 李心傳 (1167-1244), 664, 810, 883
- Li Hung 李紘, 298
- Li I-ch'ao 李彝超, 81
- Li I-yin (King of Hsia, r. 935-67), 251
- Li Jang 李讓, 148
- Li Jen-fu 李仁福, 54
- Li Jen-ta, 169
- Li Jo-ku 李若谷, 300
- Li Ju-i, 806
- Li Kang 李綱 (1083-1140), 637, 638, 639, 640, 645, 646, 648-649, 663, 666, 667
- Li K'o-ju 李克叡 (d. 978), 251
- Li K'o-ning 李克寧, 53
- Li K'o-yung 李克用 (Prince of Chin, 895-908), 58, 72, 165
 and Ch'ang-an 長安, 43
 and Chu Wen 朱溫, 46-48, 49, 51, 52, 53
 defeated Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 39
- and Li Mao-chen 李茂貞, 54
 and Liu Jen-kung 劉仁恭, 43
 and Lu-chou 潞州, 53
 and Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 146
- Li Ku, 115, 124
- Li Kuang 李光 (1077-1155), 680-681, 693
- Li Kuei 李貴, 802
- Li Liang-tso 李諱祚 (r. 1048-67), 22
- Li Mao-chen 李茂貞, 42, 46-47, 48, 53, 54, 67, 157, 164
- Li Ming-fu 李鳴復, 882, 903
- Li Mu 李沐, 781
- Li O-tu, 620
- Li Pang-yen, 637, 638, 640
- Li Pi 李璧 (1159-1222), 792, 808, 811, 814
- Li Pien 李昪 (r. 937-42). *See* Hsü Chih-kao 徐知誥
- Li Shao-jung 李紹榮, 73
- Li Shih-ning, 451
- Li Shou-chen 李守貞 (Prince of Ch'in), 101, 108-109
- Li Shuang 李爽, 806
- Li Shun 李順 (?-c. 994), 257
- Li Shun-ch'en, 72
- Li Shun-chü 李舜舉, 477
- Li Ssu-chao 李嗣昭, 54, 58, 65, 67
- Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源 (T'ang Ming-tsung 唐明宗, 926-33), 71, 72-82, 87, 165
- Li Sung 李崧, 97, 100, 108
- Li T'ai-tsung 李太宗 (r. 1028-54), 333
- Li T'an 李壇, 851, 872, 896-897
- Li Tao 李道, 759
- Li Tao-ch'u'an 李道傳, 893
- Li T'ao 李燾 (1115-84), 526, 558
- Li Te-ming 李德明, 300
- Li Ti 李迪, 280, 290
- Li Ting 李定 (1028-87), 365, 375
- Li T'ing-chih 李庭芝 (d. 1276), 922, 927, 934, 937, 947, 948, 949
- li-ts'ai* 理財. *See* resources, management of

- Li Ts'an 李參, 395
- Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗 (T'ang)
 Chuang-tsung 唐莊宗, r.
 923-26), 53-54, 58, 59, 62-74,
 164, 165
 military reorganization of (908), 70
 southern offensive of (918-19), 64
- Li-tsung 理宗 (Chao Yün, 1205-64, r.
 1224-64), 33, 34, 905. *See also*
 Chao Yün (Li-tsung, 1205-64,
 r. 1224-64)
- and Chia Ssu-tao 賈似道, 916
compassionate endeavors of, 872
and Confucian ideals, 873
and domestic concerns, 906
and public opinion, 872
sexual intemperance of, 874,
 913
- and *Tao-hsüeh* 道學, 874
- Li Tsung-mien 李宗勉, 859, 865, 880
- Li Tsung-o 李宗誥 (964-1012), 276
- Li Ts'ung-chang 李從璋, 84
- Li Ts'ung-hou 李從厚 (T'ang Min-ti
 唐閔帝, 933-34), 82, 83
- Li Ts'ung-i 李從益 (Han Kao-tsu 漢高祖,
 r. 947-48), 105
- Li Ts'ung-k'o 李從珂 (T'ang Fei-ti 唐廢帝,
 934-36), 82
- Li Ts'ung-min 李從敏, 84
- Li Tzu 李誥 (d. 1036), 284, 290
- Li Wei 李瑋, 334
- Li-yang 黎陽, 63
- Li Yen, 591, 627, 638
- Li Yin-heng 李殷衡, 162
- Li Yung-ho, 289
- Li Yü 李煜 (r. 960-75), 204-205,
 227
- Li Yüan-hao 李元昊 (r. 1032-48), 21, 22,
 300, 314-315, 352
- Li Yüan-li 李元礪 (d. 1210), 831-832
- Li Yün 李筠 (?-960), 214, 215, 229,
 245
- Liang, Dowager Empress (*huang
 t'ai-hou*) 皇太后, 472, 475, 551
- Liang-che circuit 兩浙路, 133, 143, 419,
 421, 622-626
- East, 143
- West, 143
- Liang-chou 梁州, 79, 300
- liang fu* 兩府. *See* “two authorities”
- Liang Keng-yao 梁庚堯, 444
- liang-ku* 良賈. *See* merchants, worthy
- Liang Mo-ti 梁末帝 (r. 913-23), 179. *See
 also* Chu Yu-chen 朱友貞
- Liang Shih 梁適, 311, 313
- Liang Shih-ch'eng 梁師成 (d. 1126), 605,
 638
- liang-shui* 兩稅. *See* tax, double
- Liang T'ai-tsu 梁太祖 (r. 907-12). *See*
 Chu Wen 朱溫
- Liang T'ao 梁灝, 510, 516, 518,
 537
- and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung,
 542
- banishment of, 542
- and Chang Shun-min 張舜民, 517
- and Teng Wen-po, 527
- Liang-tso (1046-67), 4, 343, 352-353,
 354
- Liao 遼, 20, 22, 23, 27-28, 221-222,
 247, 262, 627
- imperial cavalry of, 221, 222
- Liao dynastic history (Liao shih)* 遼史, 103,
 242, 249
- Liao dynasty (907-1125), 131
- Liao Hsing-tsung 遼興宗 (r. 1031-55),
 311. *See* Tsung-chen 宗貞
- Liao Kang 廖剛 (1071-1143), 670
- Liao-Later Chin alliances (936-42),
 87-97
- Liao-Later Chin war (c. 943-47), 97,
 103
- Liao Mu-tsung 遼穆宗 (r. 951-69), 220.
- See also* Ching
- Liao Sheng-tsung 遼聖宗 (r. 982-1031),
 249, 288
- Liao Shih-tsung 遼世宗 (r. 947-51). *See*
 Wu-yü 兀欲

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1053

- Liao Southern Capital (Yu-chou 幽州), 98, 99, 129
 Liao T'ai-ts'u 遼太祖 (r. 916-26). *See also* A-pao-chi 阿保機
 Liao T'ai-tsung 遼太宗 (r. 926-47). *See also* Te-kuang
 Liao T'ien-tso 遼天祚 (r. 1101-25), 630, 634
 Liao-yang 遼陽, 628
 Liao Yen-jou 廉彥若, 151
 library. *See specific library*
 Lieh Harbor 涼港, on an overland trade route, 182
lieh-hsiao. *See* military officer
 Lien Chung-yü 連重遇, 168
 Lien Heng-fu 練亨甫, 453-454
 Lin-an 臨安, 28, 643, 654, 937-942, 946, 948. *See also* Hang-chou 杭州
 coup in, 805-812
 Lin-chiang 臨江, 933
 Lin-chou 麟州, 309
lin-chii-hsiang-pao 鄰居相保. *See* mutual guarantee group, neighborhood
 Lin Hsi 林希, 536
 Lin Hsien-k'o 林獻可, 287, 290
 Lin-huang 臨潢, 629
 Lin Ling-su 林靈素, 611-612, 613
 Lin Ta-chung 林大中 (1131-1208), 761, 777, 780, 788, 814, 815
 Lin Te-yang 林德暘, 960
 Lin T'e 林特, 272
 Lin Yen-yü 林延遇, 183
 Ling-chou 靈州, 473, 475, 477
 Ling-nan 嶺南, 5, 10, 152, 153, 155, 170, 182, 189
Ling-pao. *See* Taoism 道教, *Ling-pao* (sect), 611, 1080
 Ling-p'ing, 551
 liquor, Southern Sung tax on, 698
 literati (*shih*), 13
 Liu, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后, 969-1033), 285-291, 292. *See also* Liu, Empress
 Liu, Empress (969-1033), 277, 279. *See also* Liu, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou* 皇太后)
 Liu, James T. C. (Liu Tzu-chien), 784, 902
 Liu An-shih 劉安世 (1048-1125), 350, 510, 521, 523, 537
 banishment of, 542
 rehabilitation of, 564
 and Teng Wen-po, 527
 Liu ancestral temple, 111
 Liu Ch'ang 劉鋕 (r. 958-71), 203-204, 227
 Liu Ch'ang-kuo 劉昌國, 803
 Liu Ch'ang-lu 劉昌魯, 162
 Liu Ch'ang-tso 劉昌祚, 473-476
 Liu Cheng 留正 (1129-1206), 754, 757, 762, 765, 766-776, 787, 788, 790, 897
 and Kuang-tsung's abdication, 771
 140-day protest of, 767, 769, 770
 and *Tao-hsüeh* 道學, 770
 Liu Cheng2, 535
 Liu Cheng-fu, 580
 Liu Cheng-yen 劉正彥, 650-651
 Liu Ch'eng-chün 劉承鈞 (Han Hsiao-ho-ti 漢孝和帝, 955-68), 129
 Liu Ch'eng-kuei 劉承珪, 272
 Liu Ch'eng-yu 劉承祐 (Han Yin-ti, 948-50), 107, 110, 210. *See also* Han Yin-ti 漢隱帝 (r. 948-50)
 Liu Ch'i 劉琦, 374
 Liu Ch'iz 劉錡, 682
 Liu Chien-feng 劉建峰, 149-150
 Liu Ch'ien (Chih-chien), 153-154, 210, 320
 Liu Chih 劉摯, 376, 420, 440, 491, 493, 510, 515, 524, 525-526, 538
 accused of factional treachery, 528-529
 and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung 宋哲宗, 542

- Liu Chih 劉摯 (*cont.*)
 and amnesty for Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確,
 528
 banishment of, 542
 censoral indictments of, 537
 and Chang Tun 章惇, 529
 on drafted service, 503
 and "engrossers," 442
 on fifth column, 522
 on hired-service, 437
 and Hsing Shu 邢恕, 529
 and Liang T'ao 梁肅, 518
 stripped of prestige titles, 574
 and Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 499
 and Tseng Pu 曾布,
 Liu Chih-yüan 劉知遠, 91, 96, 101, 112.
See also Han Kao-tsu 漢高祖
 (r. 947-48)
 and the Later Han 後漢 (947-50),
 103-112
 Liu Cho 劉 (d. 1227), 849
 Liu Ch'u-jang 劉處讓, 91
 Liu Chung-wu 劉仲武, 620, 621
 Liu Ch'ung 劉崇 (Han Shih-tsu 漢世祖,
 r. 951-95), 112-113, 120, 129
 Liu Chün 劉濬, 162
 Liu clan, ancestral temples for, 286
 Liu Fa 劉法, 620, 621
 Liu Fu 劉黼 (b. 1217), 310, 905
 Liu Han-hung 劉漢宏, 142
 Liu Han-pi 劉漢弼 (d. 1244), 883, 884
 Liu-ho 六合, 125
liu-hou 留後. *See* commandant
 Liu Hun-k'ang (1035-1108), 610
 Liu I 劉誼, 421, 438
 Liu Jen-kung 劉仁恭, 43-44, 47, 48, 51,
 61
 Liu Kuang-shih 劉光世 (1142-1222),
 654, 669, 676, 777, 780
 Liu Kuang-tsu 劉光祖, 785, 786, 788,
 790, 794, 814, 820-821
 Liu K'uei, 580
 Liu Kung 劉珙 (1122-78), 727, 728,
 734
- Liu Meng-yen 留夢炎, 936, 940
liu-nei chüan. *See* Bureau of Executive
 Personnel
 Liu P'ing 劉平, 301
liu-pu 六部. *See* six ministries
 Liu Shen-chiao 劉審交, 92
liu-shen chin-shou. *See* conferences, illicit
 private
liu-shou 留守. *See* Resident Defender
liu-shou 留守 (regent). *See specific actor*
 Liu Shou-kuang 劉守光 (r. 911-13),
 59-61, 65
 Liu Shu 劉述, 374
liu-su chiao-hsing chih jen 流俗僥倖之人. *See*
 opportunist, vulgar
liu-su ch'un-tang 流俗群黨. *See*
 conventionalists, party of
 Liu Sui, 287
 Liu Te-hsiu 劉德秀, 793
 Liu Ts'an 柳璨, 51
liu tsei 六賊. *See* Six Felons
 Liu Ts'ung-hsiao 留從效, 169-170,
 757
 Liu Ts'ung-te 劉從德, 288
 Liu Yen 劉巖 (r. 917-42), 155, 183, 185,
 188, 195, 203
 Liu Yin 劉隱, 153, 154-155, 170, 203
 Liu Ying-ch'i 劉應起, 882
 Liu Yü 劉豫 (1073-1143), 657-658,
 674
 Liu Yüeh 劉越, 287
 Liu Yüeh2 劉爚 (1144-1216), 788
 Liu Yün 劉蕡, 111
 livestock. *See* cattle
 Lo Chih-hsiang 駱知詳, 161
 Lo Ch'ung-hsun 羅崇勳, 290
 Lo faction 洛. *See* factionalism; factions
 Lo Hung-hsin 羅弘信, 47
 Lo Jih-yüan 羅日願 (d. 1209), 832-833
Lo River text (Lo-shu) 洛書, 270
 Lo Shao-wei 羅紹威, 47, 51, 57
 Lo Shih-ch'uan 羅世傳 (d. 1211),
 831-832
 Lo Tien 羅點, 774, 779

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1055

- Lo-yang 洛陽, 30, 34, 38, 43, 48, 52, 73, 90–91, 105, 138, 207, 245, 641, 858, 862
- Lo Yen-kuei 羅彥樞, 217
- Lo Yu 羅誘, 708
- loans. *See also* credit
basic capitalization (*pen-ch'ien*) 本錢, 396
forced (*i-p'ei*) 抑配, 396, 416
- localism, 35
- locusts, 272, 279, 291, 324, 830, 872
- longan (*lung-yen*) 龍眼 fruit, 182
- looting, 213, 220, 226. *See also* pillage
- Lou Chao 樓炤 (1088–1160), 681
- Lou-tse yüan* 漏澤園. *See* Pauper's Cemetery
- Lou Yin-liang 婁寅亮, 653
- Lou Yüeh 樓諤 (1137–1213), 770, 777, 780, 788, 790, 812, 814, 815
- loyalist. *See specific actor*
- loyalty, 45, 50, 66, 141–142, 207, 211, 246, 290, 303, 317, 643, 944, 947–948, 951, 955–961. *See also* allegiance
- lu* 路. *See* regional circuit
- Lu Chih, 676
- Lu Chiu-yüan 隆九淵 (Lu Hsiang-shan, 1139–93), 788, 815. *See also* Lu Hsiang-shan
- Lu-chou 潘州, 47, 49, 53–54, 58, 59, 105, 120
909 campaign, 54
- Lu-chou2 盧州, 145
- Lu-chou3 瀘州, 328, 329, 897, 920, 954
- Lu Hsia-fu (1238–79), 941, 946, 947, 948, 951
- Lu Hsiang-shan. *See* Lu Chiu-yüan 隆九淵 (Lu Hsiang-shan, 1139–93)
- Lu Hsiu-fu 隆秀夫, 951, 952, 956, 957, 958
- Lu Kuang-ch'ou 盧光稠, 147, 154, 178
- Lu Shou-ch'in 盧守勤, 305, 307
- Lu Tien 隆佃, 376
- Lu To-hsun 盧多遜 (934–85), 258–259
- Lu Tsung-tao 魯宗道 (966–1029), 280, 281, 284, 285–286, 288
- Lu Wen-chin 盧文進, 80
- Lu Yen-hung 鹿晏弘, 156–157
- Lu Yün-sheng 盧允升, 887, 888
- Lü, Empress, 762
- Lü Chia-wen 呂嘉問, 406, 430, 431, 443, 449, 453, 497, 498
- Lü Chung, 514
- Lü Ho-ch'ing, 451
- Lü Hui 呂晦 (1014–71), 341–342, 369, 373
- Lü Hui-ch'ing 呂惠卿 (1032–1110), 367, 374, 375, 376, 378, 379, 381, 382, 396, 401–402, 423, 450–452, 453
- Lü I-chien 呂義簡 (978–1044), 316–317
and the *Chi-chih ssu* 計置司, 284
and Dowager Empress Lei, 281
and Empress Kuo 郭后, 292–293
and Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹, 297–299, 322
and Hsiao T'e-mo 蕭特默, 310–311
and Jen-tsung, 287, 289, 290, 292, 299–300, 307, 313
and Lady Ch'en, 293
and Lei Yün-kung 雷允恭, 280
and monopoly reforms, 285
and Shih Chieh 石介, 321
and Sun Mien, 294
and the T'ien-sheng recension, 285
and the Yü-ch'ing chao-ying Palace 玉清昭應宮, 286
- Lü I-hao 呂頤浩 (1091–1139), 651, 652, 653, 673, 680, 688
- as Commander-in-chief (*Tu-tu*) 都督, 667
- Lü Kung-chu 呂公著 (1018–81), 357, 375, 377, 378–379, 380, 464, 476, 477, 479, 481, 491, 493, 517, 519
- alleged treachery of, 541
censorial indictments of, 537

1056

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Lü Kung-chu 呂公著 (*cont.*)
 and Chang Tun 章惇, 493
 on drafted service, 503
 opposition to Green Sprouts, 490-491
 posthumous honors recinded, 538
 and Shen-tsung, 454
 stripped of prestige titles, 541, 574
- Lü Kung-pi 呂公弼 (1007-73), 344, 406
- Lü Sheng-ch'ing 呂升卿, 376, 451
- Lü Shih-k'uei 呂師夔, 949
- Lü Ta-fang 呂大防, 341, 507, 512, 524, 525-526, 533, 537
 and amnesty for Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 528
 banishment of, recommended, 538
 and Chang Tun 章惇, 539
 deprived of prestige titles, 538
 stripped of prestige titles, 574
 and Tseng Pu 曾布,
- Lü T'ao 呂陶, 423, 442, 495, 504, 511
 and Chang Shun-min 張舜民, 517
 and Ch'eng I 程頤, 519
 and Han Wei 韓維, 520
 on reformists, 532
 rehabilitation of, 564
 return to court, 521
 and Su Shih 蘇軾, 515
- Lü Tsu-chien 呂祖儉 (d. 1196), 79, 788, 789
- Lü Tsu-t'ai 呂祖泰, 789-790, 814
- Lü Tuan 呂端 (935-1000), 260, 261
- Lü Wei-ch'ing, 423, 451
- Lüan-chou 漢州, 629
- Lung-hsing² 隆興, 933
- Lung-hsing 隆興 era (Eminent Ascendancy, 1163-65), 720
- Lung Ta-yüan 龍大淵, 726-727
- Lung-yu, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*) 皇太后, 662. *See also* Yüan-yu 元祐, Dowager Empress
- Luo-wu-ch'eng 喬兀城, 470
- luxuries, 186
- Ly (*Chiao-chih*) 交趾 dynasty, 329
- Ma Chih (Chao Liang-ssu 趙良嗣), 628
- Ma Chih-chieh 馬知節, 276-277
- Ma Hsi-ch'ung 馬希崇, 198-199
- Ma Hsi-fan 馬希範 (r. 932-46), 197
- Ma Hsi-kuang 馬希廣 (r. 947-49), 198
- Ma Hsi-o 馬希萼 (r. 950-1), 198
- Ma K'uo 馬擴, 663
- Ma Ling 馬令, 161
- Ma-ta 麻荅, 106
- Ma Tuan-lin 馬端臨 (c. 1254-1323), 207
- Ma Yin 馬殷 (King of Ch'u), 54, 135, 148, 149-150, 154, 158, 180, 181, 196
- Ma Yung-ch'ing 馬永卿, 350
- "Madame" (*fu-jen*) 夫人, 785
- magistrates, 230. *See also specific actor*
- male, taxable (*ting²*), 401
- Man (non-Chinese southwest ethnic groups), 833
- manager of affairs, joint (*r'ung p'ing-chang shib*) 同平章事, 157
- Manager of National Security (*p'ing-chang chün-kuo shib*)
 平章軍國事, 791, 793
- Mandate of Heaven, 45, 65, 66, 67, 76, 84, 120, 213-214, 271, 835
- manufacturing. *See specific commodity*
- Mao Chu, 581
- Mao-t'ing *k'o-hua* 茅亭客話, 176
- Mao Wen-hsi, 175
- market usage surtax (*shib-li ch'ien*)
 市利錢, 430, 441, 443, 449
- marriage. *See alliances, marriage*
- marshal, grand (*ta yüan-shuai*), 651
- Marshal of the Various Circuits, 51
- Masters of Imperial Interment (*shan-ling shib*), 480, 493
- McGrath, Michael C., 21, 22
- "mean and petty men," 25, 376
- Medical Service (*Yao chü*) 藥局, 872
- medicinals, 185, 186, 430

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1057

- medicines, 184
- mediocrities (*yung-jen*) 廉人, 363
- Mei Chih 梅摯, and prefecture schools, 318
- Mei-chou 眉州, 172
- Mei-lo-tu-pu, 551
- memoranda (*cha-tzu*) 削子, 246. *See also* memorials
- Memorial Forwarding Office (*T'ung-chin yin-t'ai ssu*), 342, 365
- memorials. *See also* “Myriad word memorial”; remonstrance on the abolition of the New Policies, 488
- An Tun's, on Investigation and Prosecution Bureau, 540, 541
- Chang Fang-p'ing's, on Shen-tsung, 452
- Chang K'o-kung's, on Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 581
- Chang Shang-ying's, critiquing Hsüan-jen, 535
- Chang Shih's, on Chang Yüeh 張說, 728
- against Chang Tun 章惇, 616
- Chang Tun's, on the hired service system, 501
- Chang Yung's, on the Five Devils, 272
- on Chao Hung's death, 842
- to Chen-tsung, 273, 274
- Ch'en Ch'a-o-lao's, on Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 581
- Ch'en Chün-ch'ing's self-impeaching, 724
- Ch'en Kuan's, on Chang Tun 章惇, 564
- Ch'en Tung's demanding execution of Hui-tsung ministers, 638
- on Li Kang 李綱, 639
- Cheng Chü-cheng and Liu Cheng-fu's, on Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 580
- Cheng Hsia's, on Wang An-Shih 王安石, 449
- Chou K'uei's, on auditing the Ministry of Finance, 728
- Chu Hsi's on declining authority of chief councilors, 746
- on Hsiao-tsung's reliance on personal associates, 745, 746, 784
- Chu Kuang-t'ing's, on Su Shi, 515
- to Dowager Empress Liu 劉太后, 287
- on establishing an “acting” heir apparent, 708
- Fan Ch'eng-ta's, on receiving Chin letters of state, 735
- on Fan Ch'un-jen 范純仁 and Wang Ts'un, 525
- Fan Chungyen and Fu Pi's, on reform agenda, 318
- on heir apparent, 298
- on Jen-tsung, 287
- on ritual, 287
- on filial obligations, 341
- Fu Pi's on circuit intendants, 318
- on Shen-tsung, 452
- on Green Sprouts revival, 546
- Han Ch'i 韓琦 and P'ang Chi's, on portents, 299
- Han Ch'i's, 317
- Han Shih-tsung's, on unreliability of Chin, 678
- Han Wei's, on role of monarch, 355
- Hu Ch'üan's, on Chin peace settlement, 679
- Hu Meng-yü's, on death of Chao Hung, 843
- of impeachment against Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確 and Chang Tun 章惇, 493
- from Imperial University against Shih Sung-chih 史嵩之, 883
- of the interregnum, investigated for sedition, 573–574

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

1058

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- memorials (*cont.*)
 interruption of, under Wang An-shih
 王安石, 449
 justifying blacklists, 576
 and Kao-tsung, 689
 on Liang-tso raids, 344
 Liu An-shih's, on reformist comeback,
 522
 Liu Kuang-tsu's, against Han
 T'o-chou 韓侂胄, 786
 Lou Yin-liang's, on imperial clan sons,
 653
 Lü Kung-chu's
 on jurisdictional limits, 492
 on need for unified council, 464
 on Shen-tsung, 452
 Lü Tsu-t'ai's, denouncing Han
 T'o-chou, 789
 on the Mongols 蒙古人, 859
 Ou-yang Hsiu's, on factions, 322
 P'eng Kuei-nien's, on visit of
 compassion, 768
 on Poorhouse policy, 598
 against the Shen-tsung reforms, 492
 on Shen-tsung's accession, 398
 Shih Hao's
 against a large-scale military
 campaign, 716
 on palace favorites, 744
 Shih Mi-yüan's, on war policy, 807
 Shih Sung-chih's, 880
 against Shih Sung-chih's mourning
 waiver, 882
 Ssu-ma Kuang's
 critique of activist government,
 482
 on drafted service, 501
 on hired service, 489, 501
 on military drill, 495
 on monetizing the rural economy,
 500
 on mutual security, 489
 on remonstrance, 481, 488
 on Wang An-shih 王安石, 488–489
 student, criticizing Ts'ai Ching 蔡京,
 572
 student, to be scrutinized, 905
 Su Shih's
 on Green Sprouts, 505
 on political conformity, 520
 on surplus emergency fund, 504
 Sun O's, on hired service, 545
 Sun Shih's, on the Five Devils, 272
 T'ang Chiung's, condemning reform,
 447
 Teng Jo-shui's, requesting execution
 of Shih-Mi-yüan, 842
 Teng Jun-fu's, on bowmen, 437
 against the “three traitors,” 493
 Ts'ai Ching's
 accompanying art objects, 570
 on anti-reform, 573
 on clan issues, 601
 on the extension of Sung
 hegemony, 632
 on factionalism of anti-reformists,
 573
 on Green Sprouts revival, 546
 on the salt monopoly, 594
 on Ts'ai Ching's dismissal, 581
 Ts'ai Wei's, on plot to depose
 Che-tsung, 542
 Tsung Tse's, on defense against Chin,
 650
 Tu Fan's, on domestic problems, 881
 urging investigation of Yüan-yu 元祐,
 540
 urging termination of state trade
 policy, 497
 on verification of imperial orders,
 723
 Wang An-shih's
 on a finance planning commission,
 403
 against land service, 452
 Wang P'u's, on *Tao*, 123
 Wang Shuz's, against Sung-Chin
 peace settlement, 679

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1059

- Wang Yen-sou's
 on government loansharking, 505
 on Ssu-ma Kuang 司馬光, 508
- Wei Chi-tsung's, on trade crisis, 405–406
- Wei Liao-weng's, on Shih Mi-yüan's "eight failures," 854
- Wu Ch'u-hou's, on Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 522
 on Wu Ch'ung 吳充, 454
- Wu Yung's, on Mongol alliance, 858
- Yang Wan-li's, on exercising imperial authority, 746
- Men-hsia sheng* 門下省. *See* Chancellery
- men-hsia shib-lang* 門下侍郎. *See* Chancellery, vice director of
- Mencius* 孟子, 815, 902
- Meng, Lady, 530
- Meng Ch'ang 孟昶 (r. 934–65), 202–203, 225
- Meng Chih-hsiang 孟知祥, 79, 163, 164–165, 202
- Meng-chou 盟州, 73
 rebellion at, 91
- Meng Han-ch'iung 孟漢瓊, 78, 82, 83
- Meng-ku-tai 蒙古岱, 942
- Meng Kung 孟珙, 855, 856–858, 860, 865, 868, 870
- Meng Tsung-cheng 孟宗政, 827
- mercenaries (*mu-ping*) 募兵, 409
- merchants, 98. *See also* Collateralized Loan Stations; "engrossers" (*chien-ping*) 兼并; Metropolitan State Trade Bureau; "provisioning" (*ju-chung*) method of; specific commodities; specific monopolies; state trade policy (*shib-i fa*) 市易法; trade; verification, certificate of worthy (*liang-ku*) 良質, 405
- merit-evaluation system, 748
- messengers (*ch'eng-t'ieh jen*) 承帖人, 428
 office (*ch'eng-fu*) 承符, 398
- metal-ware, 177, 184
- meteor. *See* portents, cosmological
- Metropolitan Command (*Shib-wei-ssu*), 5, 208–209, 216, 217, 218, 234
- Metropolitan State Trade Bureau, 406
- Mi-chih, 473, 548
- mi-pai* 密白. *See* orders, "confidential"
- Miao, Lady, 32, 334, 335
- Miao Fu, 650–651
- Miao-Liu mutiny (1129), 671
- Middle Yangtze region, 14
- Mien-chou 緬州, 795, 853, 864
- mien-hang ch'ien* 免行錢. *See* guild-exemption fee
- mien-i ch'ien* 免役錢. *See* service exemption, hired service
- mien-i fa* 免役法. *See* service-exemption measure
- migration, 160, 190, 191
 in the 1120s and 1130s, 699
 north-south, 135–136
- militarization, and political authority, 15
- military
 ability of, to choose own leaders, 44–45
 affairs commission (*ching-lieh-ssu*), 23
 -agricultural outposts (*ying-t'ien*) 耘田, 116–117, 125
 arts, and Hsiao-tsung, 734
 branding soldiers, 471. *See also* tattoo "cohesive squad" measures (*chieh-tui fa*), 471
 colony system (*t'un-t'ien*) 屯田, 733
 combined battalion (*ching-ping*), 471
 command (*chih-bui*) 指揮, 471
 company (*pu*), 471
 control of
 under Kao-tsung, 667–671
 under T'ai-tsui, 215–220
 drill and review (*chiaoyüeh*) 敎閱, 27, 410, 412–413, 445, 495
 exercises, 740. *See also* military drill and review (*chiaoyüeh*) 敎閱

- military (*cont.*)
 expansion, under Chu Wen 朱溫 (895–907), 45–61
 families, hereditary, 22
 forces, administration and deployment of, 233–237
 of frontier tribal troops (*fan-ping*) 蕃兵, 235
 garrison fields, 208, 219
 generals, 4, 676, 686, 744 control of, 49, 669–671
 and hereditary control over regional armies, 798
 and imperial armies (*chin-chiün*) 禁軍, 233–235, 310, 348 unfit soldiers from, 235, 733
 inspector (*hsüin-chien*) 巡檢, 407
 local troops (*ping-shib*), 407
 “loyal and righteous” (*chung-i-chiün*) 忠義軍, 823–827
 loyalist (*i-shib*) 義士, 733, 793, 804, 823–827, 828, 832, 896
 mixed battalion (*chiang*), 471
 officer (*lieh-hsiao*), 158 corps revitalization, 27
 palace. *See* Palace Army
 patrol units (*hsüin-chien*) 巡檢, 328
 people’s army (*min-ping*) 民兵, 409
 prefectural troops (*bsiang-chiün*) 廉軍, 234
 private army, 150, 219, 666, 668, 671
 power, separated from civil, 236–237
 recruitment, 732
 reform, 470–472 under Shen-tsung and Wang An-shih 王安石, 27–28 and weak frontiers, 27
 reorganization, of Li Ts’un-hsü 李存勗, 70
 retainers (*pu-ch’ü*) 部曲, 49
 “Righteous army” (*i-chiün*) 義軍, 663–664
 of “righteous braves” (*i-shib*, *i-yung*), 311, 413 servitor (*shib-ch’en*) 使臣, 413
 squad (*tui*), 471 structure (*tui-fa*) 隊法, 413 supervisor, 72, 76
 troops, regional (*ya-chiün*) 牙軍, 91
 Military Academy (*Wu-hsüeh*) 武學, 27, 470
 Military Affairs Commissioner, 109, 110, 115, 122
 Military and Civil Affairs (*chib chiün-fu shih*) 知軍府事, Director of, 142, 152
 military families, hereditary. *See* bureaucracy; civil service
 militia (*min-ping*) 民兵, 312, 325, 881, 921
 “bowmen” (*kung-shou*) 弓手, 403. *See also* archers
i-yung 義勇 system, 413, 495
 local (*bsiang-ping*) 鄉兵, 234
 officials (*chiün-chiang*) 郡將, 145
 popular (*t’u-t’uan*) 土團, 140
 “militocracy,” tenth century, 11
 Min, 5, 10, 150–152 King of (*Min wang*), 158
 local emperors in, 53 Ruler of (*Min chu*) 閩主, 168
 Min-chou 岷州, 660
Min chu 閩主. *See* Min, Ruler of
 Min Hsü 閩屬, 148–149
 Min K’ang-tsung, 179
 Min kingdom (909–45), 133, 159, 168, 179, 195, 196–197, 220, 223
min-ping 民兵. *See* army, people’s
 Ming-chou 明州 (Ning-po 寧波), 182, 184, 949. *See also* Ching-yüan
 Ming dynasty (1368–1644), 754
 Ming-shou 明受 era (1129), 651
Ming-t’ang 明堂. *See* Hall of Brightness, Hall of Enlightenment Ritual
 Mingshan, 354
 mining, 177
 Minister of Revenue (*bu-pu shang-shu*), 545

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1061

- Ministry of Finance (*Hu-pu*) 戶部, 458,
 459, 729, 750
 Left Section (*tso-ts'ao*), 460
 Right Section (*yu-ts'ao* 右曹, 460
 Ministry of Justice, 239–240
 Ministry of Personnel, 239–240, 460
 Ministry of Revenue, 116, 239
 Ministry of Rites, 239–240
 Ministry of War, 239, 461
 Ministry of Works, 239
 mint. *See specific treasury*
 Mo Chi 莫濟, 721
 Mo Chiang 莫將, 679
 Mo Chien 莫簡 (d. 1219), 832
 Mo-chou 莫簡, 4, 60, 87, 209
 monastery, 191, 208
 monetary policy. *See specific policy*
 money, 392, 438. *See also* currency
 “money became dear and goods cheap”
(ch'ien-chung huo-ch'ing) 錢重貨輕,
 441
 Möngke 蒙克蒙哥 (Mong-k'o, Meng Ko,
 r. 1251–59), 868, 869, 870,
 889, 920, 954
 Mongol Yüan (1271–1368), 17
 Mongols 蒙古人, 17, 31, 32, 33, 34–35,
 704
 assault on Szechwan, 889
 and Chin dynasty, 791
 and Hsi Hsia 西夏, 845
 and the Southern Sung dynasty,
 36–37
 1274 escalation of attacks on Sung by,
 927
 monks. *See specific actors*
Monograph on tea (*Ch'a-p'u*) 茶譜, 175
 “monopolists” (*chien-ping chih chia*)
 兼并之家, 893
 monopoly. *See also* specific commodity
 iron, 77
 liquor, 192
 salt, 77, 201, 327, 348, 351, 590,
 593–594, 698, 907
 tea, 284, 348, 351, 382
 Monopoly Tax Bureau (*Chiieh-huo wu*)
 權貨務, 185
 morality, unifying (*i tao-te i pien feng-su*)
 —道德以變風俗, 364
 Mote, Frederick W., 15, 17
 Mou Tzu-ts'ai, 888
 Mount T'ai 泰山, 271
 Mu-cheng, 468
Mu-ch'in chai 睞親宅. *See* Hostel for
 Imperial Clansmen
 Mu-chou 睞州, 623–625. *See also*
 Yen-chou4 嚴州
mu-i 募役. *See* hired service
 Mu-jung Yen-ch'ao 蔡慕容彥超 (913–63),
 113–114, 214, 216
mu-ping 募兵. *See* mercenaries
 Mu-tsung, 123
 mulberry, 58, 175–176
 murder. *See* assassination
 music and musicians, 128, 608
 mutiny. *See* rebellions
 mutual guarantee group, neighborhood
(lin-chiu-hsiang-pao) 鄰居相保, 408
 mutual security system (*pao-chia*) 保甲,
 27, 351, 407–414, 419–429,
 443, 449, 470, 471, 908, 911
 abolition of, 494–496
 abuse of guardsmen in, 445–446
 civilian administrator (*kan-tang*
kung-shih) 幹當公事, 446
 lieutenant (*chih-hui shih*) 指揮使, 446
 negative outcomes of, 445–446
 sergeant (*chih-shih*), 446
 “Myriad Word Memorial,” 24, 350,
 358–361, 366, 384. *See also*
 memorials
 Myriad Years Mountain (*Wan-sui shan*)
 萬歲山, 605
 names
 great (*ta-hsing*) 大姓, 444, 445
 rectification of, 613
 small (*hsiao-hsing*) 小姓, 445
 Nan-ch'ang 南昌, 130, 147, 220

- Nan-chao 南詔, 170, 257
- Nan-p'ing 南平, 10, 954. *See also Ching-nan 莊南*
King of (*Nan-p'ing wang*) 南平王, 158
- Nan-p'ing wang* 南平王. *See Nan-p'ing*
南平, King of
- Nan-t'ien kuo 南天國 (Nan-t'ien kingdom), 331
- Nanking 南京, 166. *See also* Chiang-ning; Chien-k'ang; Chin-ling
- natural disaster. *See specific disaster*
- navy, 125, 126, 219, 227. *See also* waterways
- Mongol, 920-921, 937
- Sung, 706, 707, 932, 957
- negotiation. *See specific actor or issue*
- Nei-ch'i'u 內丘, 111
- nei-p'i* 內批. *See orders, imperial*
- Nei-tsang k'u* 內藏庫. *See Palace Treasury*
- Neo-Confucianism, 28, 36. *See also Tao-hsüeh 道學*
- nephews, imperial (*huang-chih*) 皇姪, 259. *See also* adoption
- nepotism, 237, 313, 369, 693, 816, 876, 936
- network. *See specific network*
- New Meaning of the Three Canons* (*San-ching hsin-i*), 364
- New Policies (*bsin-fa*) 新法, 24-27, 32, 231, 327
- components of, 384
- fiscalization of, 394
- institutional perspective on, 24
- political perspective on, 24
- predicates of success of, 367-378, 405
- profitability of, 433-435
- restoration of, under Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 590-596
- revanchist underpinnings of, 27
- revival of, and revenue for
re-armament, 549
- Shao-sheng 紹聖 revival of, 543, 547
- social impact of, 435-447
- and Wang An-shih 王安石, 24
- Ngo Quyen 吳權, 171
- Ni Ssu 倪思 (1147-1220), 762, 812, 816
- Nine Classics, 116, 295, 319
- Nine Gifts, 51
- nine kingdoms of the south, 206
- Ning-kuo 嶺國, 933
- Ning-po 嶺波. *See also* Ch'ing-yüan; Ming-chou
- Ning-tsung 嶺宗 (Chao K'uo 趙擴, 1168-1224, r. 1194-1224), 33, 773, 810-811, 882, 915. *See also* Chao K'uo 趙擴 (Ning-tsung, 1168-1224, r. 1194-1224)
- final edict of, 836
- and Hsiao-tsung, 785
- personality of, 774-775
- Ningsia modern province, 79, 252
- Nishikawa Masao 西川正夫, 200
- no-mi* 糯米. *See rice, glutinous*
- non-action, principle of (*wu wei*), 689
- non-Chinese. *See specific ethnic group*
- North China
- consequences of Jurchen conquest of (1127), 29
- Khitan raids in (902-26), 64
- in the late ninth century, 41
- North China Plain, 222-223, 307, 615
- Northeast Marchmount (*Ken-yüeh*) 艱嶽, 605-606
- Northern Capital, 305
- Northern Han dynasty (952-79), 112, 124, 133, 206, 209, 248
- and Later Chou 後周 (951-54), 112-119
- 939 campaign against, 14
- 979 campaign against, 14
- Northern Sung dynasty (960-1127)
- fall of (1127), 614-643
- financial resources of, 698-699
- salt and tea monopolies of, 698
- notice, palace, 934
- Nung Chih-kao 儂贊高 (Jen-hui), 331-334

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1063

- nung-t'ien shui-li fa* 農田水利法. *See*
 agricultural lands and irrigation
 policy
- Nung Tsun-fu (Nùng T aa)n Ph ua),
 331
- Nung Tsung-tan 儒宗旦, 334
- nuns
 Buddhist, 913
 Taoist 道家, 292, 874
- nurse. *See specific actor*
- O-chou, 鄂州 147, 928, 933, 937
- obligation. *See* allegiance, alliance, filial
 piety
- occult master (*fang-shih*) 方士, 606, 608,
 609
- Office for Emergencies (*Chi-su fang*)
 機速房, 667
- Office of Audience Ceremonies (*Ko-men
 ssu*) 關門司, 726, 763–764, 765,
 768
- Office of Diplomatic Correspondence
 (*Wang-lai kuo-bsin so*) 往來國信所,
 269
- Office of Economizing (*Ts'ai-chien chü*)
 裁減局, 355
- Office of the Trade Superintendent
 (*Shib-po ssu*) 市舶司, 185
- Office of Transmission (*Yin-t'ai ssu*)
 通進銀臺司, 449
- offices
 redundant (*ch'ung-san tie-ssu*) 重三疊四,
 458
 sale of, 192
 staff (*fang*), 462
 stipendiary (*chi-lu kuan*) 寄祿官,
 238–239, 349, 458
 “official families and families of
 substance” (*kuan-bu
 bsing-shib-hu*) 官戶形勢戶,
 393
- officials
 drafting (*chib-chib-kao*) 知制誥, 376
 finance, 109
- supernumerary (*jung-kuan*) 冗官, 76,
 349, 352, 459
-  g dei (r. 1229–41), 853, 863, 867
 succession following death of,
 867–868
- omen. *See* portents
- orders
 “confidential” (*mi-pai*) 密白, 723
 imperial (*chib2*) 旨, 285, 340, 742
 imperial or “palace” (*nei-p'i, y -pi*),
 723
 religious, 121
 secret, 723
- Ordos Desert, 4, 17, 21, 23, 251, 252,
 300, 354
- orphan. *See* adoption
- Ou-t'ang 藕塘, 676
- Ou-yang Ch'e 歐陽澈, 649
- Ou-yang Hsiu 歐陽修 (1007–72)
 and the Ch'ing-li 廉曆 reforms
 (1043–45), 316, 317, 321,
 364
 and civil service reform, 352
 on factionalism, 783
 and Fan Chung-yen, 298
 and government usury, 414–416
 and the imperial libraries, 294
 after Jen-tsung, 337
 and Jen-tsung, 299, 323
 and Li Yuan-hao, 315
 and Liu Yen, 185, 352
 and prefecture schools, 318
 and Shih Chieh, 321–322
 and Su Hs n, 345–346
 and surveillance commissioners,
 320
 and Wang An-shih, 373
 and Ying-tsung, 341, 345
- Outline and details of the comprehensive
 mirror* (*Tzu-chib t'ung-chien
 kang-mu*), 900
- Outstanding models from the storehouse of
 literature* (*Ts'e-fu y an-kuei*,
 1005–13), 255–256

1064

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- pao-hsing* 八行. *See* Eight Conduct policy
 (*pao-hsing*)
- pao-hsing2* 八刑. *See* eight punishments
 (*pao-hsing2*)
- pao-pao* 八寶. *See* “eight treasures” or
 “eight imperial seals”
- pao-tzu chün* 八字軍. *See* Army of Eight
 Characters
- Pacification Commission (*an-fu-ssu*), 23
- Pacification Commissioner (*ching-lieh*
an-fu shih), 619, 625, 667
- Pacification Commissioner-in-chief
 (*an-fu ta-shih*), 669
- pacifist. *See specific actor*
- “pacifying the Four Quarters and
 intimidating the barbarians,”
 270
- Pai Shih-chung, 584, 637, 638
- palace, temporary (*hsing-kung*), 652
- Palace Army, 118, 120-121, 131
- Palace Censor (*tien-chung shih yü-shih*),
 495
- Palace Command (*Tien-ch'ien ssu*), 5,
 208-209, 216, 218, 219, 234,
 313
- Palace Guard, 743
- Palace Library (*Pi-shu sheng*), 691, 692
- Palace of Extended Blessings (*Yen-fu
 kung*), 603
- Palace of Nine Movements (*Chiu-ch'eng
 kung*), 609
- Palace Treasury (*Nei-tsang k'u*), 224,
 291, 302, 749-750
- Pan-chih*. *See* Imperial Elite
- P'an Fu, 840-841
- P'an Jen, 840, 848
- P'an Ping, 840-841
- P'ang Chi 龐緝, 299, 311, 323
 and the Ch'ing-li 慶曆 reforms
 (1043-45), 317, 321
- P'ang Chü-chao 龐巨昭, 162
- P'ang Hsün 龐勛, 153
 revolt (860s), 137-138
- Pao-an chün 保安軍, 305, 306
- pao-chang* 保長. *See* small-guard chief
- pao-cheng* 保正. *See* superior guard leader
- pao-chia* 保甲. *See* mutual security system
- pao-ma* 保馬. *See* horses, (mutual security
 horse pasturage)
- Pao-shan* 寶山. *See* “Precious Mountain”
- pao-ting* 保丁. *See* guardsmen
- parent (*ch'in*) 親, 342, 678
- Parhae. *See* Po-hei
- “party system,” 25
- pasture. *See* agriculture
- Pauper's Cemetery (*Lou-tse yüan*), 596,
 599, 600
- pavilions, pleasure, 887
- pawn shops, 444
- payments, annual (*sui-pi* 歲幣), 267, 268,
 718, 719. *See also* tribute, annual
 peace settlement of 1164-65, 713-715.
See also specific peace settlement
- Pearl Pavilion of the Jade Hall 玉堂珠殿,
 185
- Pearl River 珠江, 5
- pearls, 227, 280, 303, 684
- peasantry, militarizing the, 409
- Pei-ching, xi, 818
- Pei-chou 貝州, 62
- Pei-pien yao-lan* 備邊要覽. *See* Conspectus of
 border region defense preparedness
- Peking 北京, xi, 14, 43
- pen-ch'ien* 本錢. *See* loans, basic
 capitalization
- P'eng I-pin 彭義斌 (d. 1225), 847, 848,
 850-851
- P'eng Kuei-nien 彭龜年 (1142-1206),
 758, 761, 767, 770, 777, 778,
 779, 780, 781, 783, 790, 814
- P'eng Shih-hsi 彭什羲, 329
- P'eng Ssu-yung 彭思永, 343
- p'eng-tang* 朋黨. *See* “factions (*tang*) and
 cliques”
- pepper, 184
- Peterson, Charles A., 34

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1065

- philosopher and philosophy. *See specific actor or movement*
 physician. *See specific doctor or patient*
 physiographical barriers, national, and political boundaries in the south, 10–11
 Pi Chung-yu 畢仲游, 435, 482
pi-i 敵邑. *See fiefdom, insignificant*
Pi-shu sheng 秘書省. *See Imperial Library, Palace Library*
 Pi Tsai-yü 畢再遇, 794, 795, 805
 P'i Jih-hsiu 皮日休, 162
 Pieh Chih-chieh 別之傑 (d. 1253), 885
 Pien Canal 沔河, 222
 Pien-chou 沔州, 43, 48, 51–52, 180.
See also K'ai feng
 by 895, 42
pien-hsiu chung-shu t'iao-li-ssu
 遷修中書條例司. *See Sub-council for the Compilation of Secretariat Regulations*
 Pien-liang 沔梁. *See K'ai feng*
 Pien River 沔河汴水, 124
 piety, filial, 678, 768, 902
 pillage, 207, 210, 942, 959–961
 Pin-chou 邗州, 50
 Ping-ch'ang 秉常. *See Wei-ming*
 Ping-ch'ang 崇名秉常
 Ping-chou 幷州, 298, 299. *See also* T'ai-yüan 太原
ping-shih. *See military, local troops*
 P'ing Chi, 334
 P'ing-chiang 平江, 933, 937, 939. *See also* Su-chou 蘇州
 P'ing-chou 平州, 629
 P'ing-hsia 平夏, 551, 616
pinyin, xi
 pirate. *See specific actor or engagement*
 plague, 99
 playing barbarians off against each other (*i-i chib-i* 以夷制夷), 247
 pneumonia. *See specific actor*
 Po-chou 滩州, 271
 Po-chou2 滩州, 954
 Po-hai 渤海 (Parhae), on 16
 Po-hsiang 柏鄉, 59
po-hsüeh hung-tz'u 博學宏詞. *See eruditus literatus*
po-i-wu 博易務. *See trading agencies*
 P'o-yang Lake 鄱陽湖, 5, 134
 poem, poet, and poetry. *See specific entries*
 policy
 criticism. *See memoranda, memorials*
 foreign. *See specific ruler or councilor*
 frontier
 Shih Ching-t'ang's, 94–95
 Southern Sung 南宋, 34–35
 Policy Deliberation Hall (*I-shih t'ang* 議事堂), 753
 Poorhouse policy (*chüi-yang fa*), 598
 poorhouses (*chüi-yang yüan*), 596,
 597–599
 population. *See also specific location*
 registers, 77
 southern, 134
 urban, growth of, 701–703
 portents
 astronomical, 498–499
 cosmological, 452, 535, 578, 579,
 605, 902. *See also* comet; eclipse,
 solar
 meteorological, 761
 supernatural, 53
 poverty. *See debt*
 power, division of, 240–241
 preceptor, grand, 791
 "Precious Mountain" (*Pao-shan* 寶山),
 959–961
 prefect (*tz'u-shih* 刺史), 151, 231
 prefectures (*chou* 州, *chiin* 郡), 231
 administration of, 748
 administrator (*chih chou*), 748
 Chu Wen's allegiance to the, 49, 55
 and the Early T'ang 唐, 40
 prerogative, imperial (*jen-chu chib ch'üan*
 人主之權), 364–367

- prince of state (*kuo-wang* 國王), 127
 prison. *See specific location*
 privilege
 gubernatorial, Li Ts'un-hsü's
 reduction of, 70
 hereditary (*yin2* 蔭), 158, 763, 782
 production, industrial, 174
 professor. *See specific actor*
 "Propagating Abbot (*ch'u-an-fa sha-men*
 傳法沙門, Han Chiang 韓絳), 451
 propriety (*li3*), 934
 proscriptions. *See also* blacklist
 factional (1102–04), 572–578
 intent of, 575–578
 prosperous and strong (*fu-ch'iang* 富強),
 24
 prostitutes, 874, 887, 914
 protection privileges (*yin2* 蔭), 238,
 318
 hereditary, 324, 325
 protégé. *See* adoption; "sons," imperial
 protest. *See specific cause, instigator, or*
 location
 provinces (*tao*), 40
 after An Lu-shan's rebellion, 40
 Provisioning Bureaus, 605
pu-ch'ü 部曲. *See* retainers, personal
 military
 Pu-sa An-chen 布薩安貞 (d. 1221),
 830
 Pu-sa K'uei 布薩揆 (P'u-san K'uei 僕散揆,
 d. 1207), 805
 P'u, Prince of. *See* Chao Tsung-shih
 趙宗實 (Sung Ying-tsung 宋英宗,
 r. 1063–67); Chao Yün-jang
 趙允讓 (995–1059)
 controversy over the ritual status of,
 340–343
 P'u-an, Prince, 522, 708. *See also* Chao
 Po-ts'ung 趙伯瞭 (1127–94);
 Chao Yüan 趙瑗 (Chao Po-tsung,
 Prince P'u-an, Emperor
 Hsiao-tsung)
 P'u-chou 潼州, 627
- P'u-san K'uei 僕散揆. *See* Pu-sa K'uei
 布薩揆
 P'u Shou-keng 蒲壽庚, 950
 P'u-t'ien Fang 浦田方, 451
 P'u Tsung-meng 蒲宗孟, 382, 478
 p'u-yeh 僕射, 725
 Public Fields (*kung-t'ien*) measure,
 "disturbed the people" (*jao-min* 搖民),
 894
 public fields, public lands. *See* Public
 Fields measure (*kung-t'ien fa*
 公田法)
 Public Lands Bureau (*Kung-t'ien so*
 公田所), 134, 370, 591
 public opinion. *See* memoranda;
 memorials
 Public Pharmacies (*Ho-chi chü*), 597
 purchase station (*chü* 局), 432
 purge, factional, and Six Felons, 557
- rain. *See* flooding
 "rally on behalf of the emperor"
 (*ch'in-wang* 勸王), 933
 rape, 226
 rating system, merit, 318
 "ravage the people and injure the state"
 (*ping-min shang-kuo* 痘民傷國),
 488
 rebellion, 96, 934. *See also* Red Turban
 (*Hung-chin* 紅巾) uprising
 of An Ch'ung-jung 安重榮, 96
 of An Lu-shan 安祿山, 38, 43, 134,
 607
 across the Central Plain, 105
 in Chang-chou 漳州, 169
 of Chang Fu and Mo Chien, 832
 at Ch'en-ch'iao 陳橋, 210–213
 at Ch'en-chou2 鄭州, 831
 Ch'iu Fu's, 137
 of Chung Hsiang, 665
 of Fan Yen-kuang 范延光, 90–91
 in Fu-chien, 948
 at Hsia-chou 夏州, 54
 at Hsü-chou, 833

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1067

- of Hsü Pu 許卜, 833
 in Kuang-nan, 948
 of Li Ch'ung-chin 李重進, 215
 of Li I-ch'ao 李彝超, 81
 of Li Yüan-li 李元礪, 831
 of Lo Jih-yüan 羅日愿, 832–833
 of Lo Shih-ch'uan 羅世傳, 831
 in Lo-yang 洛陽, 73
 at Meng-chou 孟州, 91
 of Nung Chih-kao 儂贊高, 329–334
 by the Palace Guard, 937–946
 of P'ang Hsün 龐勋, 137–138
 in reaction to Kuo Ch'ung-t'ao's
 murder, 72–73
 by Shantung loyalists, 845–852,
 896
 in Shuo-feng, 79
 Southern, under Kao-tsung, 664–666
 of Wang Hsiao-po 王小波, 257
 of Wang Hsien-chih 王仙芝 and
 Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 138–140
 at Ya-chou 雅州, 833
 of Yang Yao, 665
 rebels. *See* rebellion
 recentralization
 and Ch'ai Jung 柴榮, 5
 and Chu Wen 朱溫, 5
 reclamation and reconstruction,
 172–174
Record by the Su River (Su-shui chi-wen
 凍水記聞), 693
Records of the historian (Shib-chi 史記),
 689
 recovery of lost land (*bui-fu* 恢復). *See*
 irredentism
 “red banner” (*ch'ib chib* 赤幟), 370
 Red-jacket bandits (*Hung-ao tsei* 紅旗賊),
 824
 Red River 紅河, 170–171, 189
 Red Turban (*Hung-chin* 陣洪進) uprising,
 832
 refugees (*kuei-ching jen*), 118, 121, 128,
 137, 191, 200, 448, 701, 714,
 715, 718, 821, 866, 881, 907
 regency. *See specific actor or regency*
 regent (*chien-kuo* 監國), 107, 110, 111
 Regent of Lo-yang 洛陽, 99
 Regent of the Eastern Capital, 61
 regicide. *See specific actors*
 regimes, 42
 hereditary, 40
 Register of Public Revenue (*Tu-chih*
 tu-chi 度支都籍), 730
 relations, foreign. *See specific ruler or*
 councilor
 relationship, fictive, 658, 719. *See also*
 adoption
 relief, 128
 religion. *See specific religion*
 remonstrance, 517–518. *See also*
 memorials
 grand master of (*chien-i ta-fu*
 諫議大夫), 519
 offices, 373–378. *See also* Censorate
 (*Yü-shih t'ai* 御史臺);
 Remonstrance Bureau
 (*Chien-yüan* 諫院)
 “opening channels of” (*k'ai yen-lu*
 開言路), 324, 367, 448, 455, 480
 “roads of” (*yen-lu* 開言路), 25, 532,
 554, 564, 573, 578
 controlled by reformists, 490
 unobstructed by Hui-tsung, 579
 Remonstrance Bureau (*Chien-yüan* 諫院),
 274, 313, 373
 renegades. *See* bandits; deserters
 rent, 627. *See also* household, tenant
 reorganization, gubernatorial, 82
 reports. *See specific reports*
 “Request for a Finance Planning
 Commission,” 403
 reserves, unspent (*hsien-tsai ch'ien*
 見在錢), 434
 Resident Defender (*liu-shou* 留守), 245
 resources
 economic, state appropriation of, 15
 management of (*li-ts'ai* 理財), 384
 Restoration, second (883), 40, 42

- Restoration reign (1086–94),
 irredentism and state activism
 under, 25. *See also* Yüan-yu 元祐
 partisans (*Yüan-yu tang* 元祐黨)
 restraint, administrative (*an-chih*
 察訪使), 479
 retainers and retinues. *See specific actors*
 retreat. *See specific event or location*
 revanchism, 27, 267, 791, 793
 revenue, and expenditure, 319
 rhinoceros horn, 184, 185, 186
 rice, 172–174, 222, 225, 684
 Champa, 136
 glutinous (*no-mi* 糯米), 443
 uncooked, 475
 rich men and great families (*fu-jen*
 ta-hsing 富人大姓) 405
 riot. *See* rebellion
 rites, 128
 mourning, 753, 756, 764, 768, 776,
 785, 786, 789, 815, 882
 Rites of Chou 周禮 (*Chou-li* 周禮), 415
 Rites of the Golden Register (*chin-lu*
 chiao), 610
 ritual, 340–343
 controversy. *See* Chao Shu 趙曙
 (*Ying-tsung*, 1032–67,
 r. 1063–67)
 court, and Hui-tsung, 608–609
 Ritual Plowing, 291
 robes, imperial, 289, 337, 646, 774,
 840, 956
 routes, 178–179
 of communication, 866
 major inland, 178
 north-south, 222
 supply
 Later Chou 後周, 125
 Southern T'ang, 125
 Rule, personal (*ch'in-cheng*)
 of Che-tsung, 531, 533, 535, 539,
 540, 547
 of Hui-tsung, 554
- “rural bandit” (*ts'ao-tsei* 草賊), 157
 rural credit (*ch'ing-miao* 青苗), 394–403,
 414–419. *See also* Green Sprouts
 sacrifices 封禪
 feng-shan, 270, 273
 twin, 271
 “Sagely Lord” (*sheng-kung* 聖公), 624
 Sai-men, 307
 salt
 certificates (*yen-ch'ao* 鹽鈔), 594
 and Ch'ien Liu 錢鏐, 141
 commercial permits for sale of, 430
 and Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹, 194
 as government payment for grain, 284
 in Huai-nan, 127–128
 permits, 432
 and Sang Wei-han 桑維翰, 93
 sea, 593
 Southern Sung tax on, 698
 in Szechwan 四川, 165, 256, 278, 698
 and the Tangut 党項, 251, 252
 and Tseng Pu 曾布, 432
 and Wang Chien 王建, 156
 and Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 145
 Salt and Iron Commissioner, 144
 Salt and Iron Monopoly Bureau, 261
San-chao pei-meng hui-pien 三朝北盟會編,
 559
san-chien 三姦. *See* “three traitors”
San-ching hsin-i. *See* New Meaning of the
 Three Canons
 San-ch'uan 三川, 307
san-hsien 三賢. *See* “three worthies”
San-kuan 三館. *See* Three Institutes of
 History, Literature, and
 Worthies
 San-men-hsia 三門下, 83
 San-pai, 302
san-sheng 三省. *See* Three Departments
San-ssu 三司. *See* Finance Commission
san-ssu shih 三司使. *See* finance
 commissioner

- san-ts'ung* 三從. *See* “three obediences”
- san-ts'ung kuan* 散從官. *See* servants
- san-ya* 三衙. *See* Three Military Bureaus
- sandalwood, 184
- Sang Chung 桑仲, 664
- Sang I 桑憚, 308–309
- Sang Wei-han 桑維翰, 93, 94, 96, 97,
98, 100, 102
- saparwood, 184
- Sariti, Anthony, 356
- “scholars of this decadent age” (*mo-shih
hsieh-shih tai-fu* 末世學士大夫),
361
- scholarship, 161
- School of Calligraphy (*Shu-hsiieh*),
School of Mathematics (*Suan-hsiieh*), 588
- School of Medicine (*I-hsiieh*), 588
- School of Painting (*Hua-hsiieh*), 588
- schools
- county (*hsien-hsiieh* 縣學), 586
 - grades or “halls” in, 586
 - county and prefectoral, 295, 318,
325, 585, 586, 587
 - and farmland, 587
 - and Liu Shih 劉湜, 318
 - and government land (*kuan-t'ien*),
295, 319, 700
 - land (*hsieh-t'ien* 學田), 694–695
 - process of instruction in, 359
 - public, 695
 - state-funded, 586
 - technical and specialty, 588
- Scogin, Hugh, 599
- scribes (*shu-piao shih* 書表史), 398. *See also* bookkeepers
- Sealed Treasury (Storehouse for the
Reserves of the State Treasury,
Tso-tsang feng-chuang k'u
左藏封樁庫), 751–752
- seals, imperial, 956
- “second Yao or Shun” (Chin Shih-tsung
金世宗), 790
- Secretariat (*Chung-shu sheng* 中書省), 462
- Director of (*chung-shu ling* 中書令),
462
- Examiners for (*chien-cheng chung-shu
wu-fang kung-shih*
檢正中書五房公事), 382
- secretariat, executive (*chih-chih-ssu
chien-hsiang en-tzu*), 379
- Secretariat-Chancellery (*Chung-shu
men-hsia* 中書門下), 21, 236, 239,
240, 241, 250, 261, 264, 275,
276, 368, 460, 462–463
- Chief Executive of the (*t'ung chung-shu
men-hsia p'ing-chang shih*), 463
- Security and Relief Clinics (*An-chi fang*),
597
- “self-criticism rooms” (*tzu-sung chai*
自訟齋), 587
- Senior Preceptor (*t'ai-shih*), 688
- sericulture, 175–176, 729
- servants (*san-ts'ung kuan* 散從官), 398
- “Serve the country with passion; swear
to kill the Chin bandits,” 663.
- See also* Army of Eight Characters
(*pa-tzu chün* 八字軍)
- service, government (*chih-i* 職役), 398
- service-assistance fees (*chu-i ch'ien*
助役錢), 400, 420
- service-exemption fees (*mien-i ch'ien*
免役錢, *mu-i fu*), 351, 376,
394–403, 420, 439, 441–442,
449, 468, 471, 500–501, 591
- service-exemption policy (*mien-i fa*
免役法), 400, 591–593. *See also*
hired service policy (*mu-i, ku-i
fa*)
- Sha-men Island 沙門島, 285
- Sha-shih 沙市, 10
- Sha-t'o 沙陀 (political and cultural group
from Central Asia), 4, 5, 41,
164, 206
- Shan-chou 潼州, 111, 310
- Shan-chou2 陝州, 83
- Shan-chou3 善州, 617

- Shan-hsi陝西, 23, 309, 312
 drill and review (*chiao-yüeh* 敎閱) in, 412
 Sung concern with, 315
shan-jang 禪讓. *See* abdication; abdication
shan li-ts'ai che 善理財者. *See* finance, men skilled at
shan-ling shih 山陵使. *See* Imperial Internment, Master of
 Shan-yü Wei-liang 山遇, 302
 Shan-yüan 潛淵 treaty (1005), 20, 21, 264
 geopolitical equilibrium after, 1005-67, 20-24
 provisions of, 262-267, 270
 Shang 商, Lady, 292, 293, 294
Shang-ch'ing. *See* Highest Purity sect
 Shang-chou 商州, 852
shang-fan 上番. *See* detached service
 Shang Fu 尚父 (ancient honorific title), 59
 Shang-kuan Chün 上官均 (1038-1115), 436, 456, 535
 Shang-kuan Kung-ying 上官公穎, 429
 Shang-kuan Wu, 657
shang-kuo 上國. *See* state, superior
 Shang-lin Lake 上林湖, 177
shang-she 上舍. *See* Imperial University (*T'ai-hsüeh* 太學), Superior College of the
Shang-shu sheng 尚書省. *See* Department of State Affairs
shang ssu-chün 上四軍. *See* Upper Four Armies
 Shang-tu 上都, 927
 Shansi modern province, 4, 11, 14, 39, 42-47, 83, 133, 206, 284
 Shantung 山東, 34, 48, 66, 137, 182, 845-852
 Shao-chou 邵州, 154
 Shao-chou2 韶州, 949
shao-fu 少傅. *See* Court Mentor
 Shao-hsing 紹興 (1131-63), 660. *See also* K'uai-chi; Yüeh-chou
 Shao Hung-yüan 邵宏淵, 717
 Shao Lang-tso 邵良佐, 314
 Shao Po-wen 邵伯溫 (1057-1134), 675
 Shao-sheng 紹聖 era (Continued Sagacity, 1094-97), 25, 535
 internal rivalries of the, 553
 triumphs of the coalition of the, 551
 "share one mind and one morality" (*t'ung-hsin t'ung-te* 同心同德), 363
she-chang 滉瘴. *See* swamp fever
she-chi 社稷. *See* "gods of soil and grain"
 sheep. *See* agriculture
 Shen, Prince of. *See* Chao Pi 趙必
 Shen Chi-chang 沈季長, 451
 Shen Chia 番甲, 182
 Shen-chih, 178
 Shen-chou 深州, 122
Shen-hsiao. *See* Taoism 道教, Divine Empyrean sect of (*Shen-hsiao*)
Shen-hsing yüan 審刑院. *See* Judicial Control Office
Shen-kuan yüan 審官院. *See* Bureau of Personnel Evaluation
 Shen K'uo 沈括, 456, 472, 473, 476
 Shen Sung, 162
shen-ting ch'ien 身丁錢. *See* tax, adult male cash
 Shen-ts'e Army 神策軍, 157
 Shen-tsung 神宗 (Chao Hsü 趙頊, 1048-85, r. 1067-85), 28, 347, 762
 as an activist ruler, 455
 campaign against Tangut Hsi Hsia, 464-478
 core of administrative reforms of, 459, 464
 end of irredentist ambitions of, 477
 irredentism and state activism under, 24-25, 28
 irredentism of, 23
 and military reform, 27-28

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1071

- Shen-tsung shih-lu* 神宗實錄, 539
Sheng-ch'ing, 453
Sheng-hsing yüan. *See* Judicial Control Office
sheng-kung 聖公. *See* "Sagely Lord"
Sheng-tsung 遼聖宗, Emperor, 262
Sheng Tu 盛度, 294
Shensi modern province, 54, 284
sheriff (wei 尉), 407
shib. *See* histories (*shib*)
Shih Chai-chih 史宅之 (1205-49), 884-885, 904
shib-ch'en 使臣. *See* military servitors
Shih Chieh 石介, 321
 and the Ch'ing-li 慶曆 reforms (1043-45), 321
Shib-ching 詩經. *See* Book of poetry
Shih Ching-ch'ing 史蹟卿, 884
Shih-ching Garrison 石鏡鎮, 140
Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭 (Chin Kao-tsu 晉高祖, r. 936-42), 81, 83, 85-98, 213. *See also* Chin Kao-tsu 晉高祖 (r. 936-42)
Shih Ch'ing 時青 (d. 1227), 849
Shih-chou 石州, 473
Shih-chou2 施州, 954
Shih Chung-li 石中立, 299
Shih Ch'ung-jui 石重睿, 97
Shih Ch'ung-kuei 石重貴 (Chin Shao-ti 晉少帝, 942-47), 97-102, 107
 Liao revenge against, 99-103
Shih Hao 史浩 (1106-94), 714, 715-717, 720, 725, 743-744
 and *Tao-hsüeh* 道學, 814
Shih Hung-chao 史弘肇, 108, 109-110
shib-i 市易. *See* state trade
shib-i fa 市易法. *See* State Trade policy
Shib-i ssu 市易司. *See* State Trade Agency
Shib-i wu 市易務. *See* State Trade Bureau
shib ideal, 360
Shih K'uang-wei 石匡威, 103
Shih Kuei 石珪 (d. 1220), 826, 827
Shih Kung-pi, 581
Shib-kuo ch'un-ch'iu 十國春秋, 182
shib-li ch'ien 市利錢. *See* market usage
 surtax
shib-lu 實錄 (veritable record, reign chronicle). *See* Veritable Record
Shih Mi-chien 史彌堅 (1164-1232), 831
Shih Mi-chung 史彌忠, 910
Shih Mi-kung 史彌羣, 844
Shih Mi-yüan 史彌遠 (1164-1233), 1208-33, 26, 32-33, 672, 775, 807-808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 875, 896, 914, 915
 and accession of Chao Yün, 836
 and Empress Yang2 楊后, 813
 and foreign policy, 817-823, 852
 and loyalist armies, 823-827
 and Lu Chiu-yüan 墜九淵, 815
 and succession after Ning-tsung, 834-838
 and *Tao-hsüeh* 道學, 814
Shih Pao-chi 石保吉 (954-1010), 217
Shib-po ssu 市舶司. *See* Office of the Trade Superintendent
Shih Shou-hsin 石守信, 217
Shih Sung-chih 史嵩之 (1189-1257), 855, 856-858, 862, 865, 866, 879-882, 884, 891, 896
shib-ta-fu 士大夫. *See* elite, scholarly
Shih T'ing-ch'en, 680, 681
Shih-tsung (r. 1161-89), 707, 790
shib-wei ch'in-chün 傳衛親軍. *See* Imperial Bodyguard
Shih-wei-ssu 傳衛司. *See* Metropolitan Command
Shih Yen-chih 史巖之 (1217-60), 892
shib yü-shih 御史. *See* Attendent Censor
 ships, 706, 928, 939, 941, 956
 overseas trade (*hai-po hsiang-yao* 海舶香藥), 185
Shou-chou 壽州 (Shansi 山西), 124, 125, 126, 145, 634, 856-858

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

1072

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- shou-shih fa* 手實法. *See* household, grading system, self-registration
- shou-yü shib* 守禦使. *See* commissioner, defense, grand shrine. *See specific shrine*
- Shu 蜀, 176. *See also* factions
- Shu 蜀, Prince of (Wu Hsi 吳曦), 801
- Shu-ch'eng 東城, 129
- shu-chib* 叔姪 (younger uncle and nephew). *See* Hsiao-ts'ung, relationship between Chin and Southern Sung during reign of
- Shu-ching* 書經. *See* Book of documents
- Shu-hsüeh* 蜀學. *See* learning, Szechwanese
- Shu-hsüehz*. *See* School of Calligraphy
- Shu-mi yüan* 樞密院. *See* Bureau of Military Affairs
- shu-piao shib* 書表史. *See* scribes
- Shu t'ao-wu* 蜀檣机, 156
- Shu wang* 蜀王. *See* Shu 蜀, King of
- shuai-ch'en* 帥臣. *See* intendents, military
- Shui-hu chuan* 水滸傳. *See* Water Margin
- Shun-chou 順州, 87, 632
- Shuo-fang 朔方, 79, 621
- siege. *See specific location*
- silk, 684, 909
- and the defensive works in Ho-tung, 302
- and Ho-pei, 310, 311
- and the Huai-nan campaign, 127
- and the Later Chou 後周, 223
- and Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源, 73
- and Li Yüan-hao 李元昊, 314
- and the Liao 遼, 271, 311
- in multistate trade, 268
- production, 43
- and Shan-hsi, 302
- and Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 87
- in the South Seas trade, 184
- Southern Sung tax on, 698
- and Tseng Pu 曾布, 432
- Silk Road, 93
- silkworm, 175–176
- silver, 127, 225, 267, 268, 280, 302, 749, 909
- and the Later Chou 後周, 223
- and the Liao 遼, 271, 311
- Sino-Steppe relations, 20
- Sino-Tangut war, first (1038–42), 22, 348
- Six Felons (*liu tsei*) 六賊, 557, 604, 605, 624, 625, 627, 638–639
- Six Imperial Armies, 48, 75, 81, 82
- Sixteen Prefectures of Yen-Yün (*Yen-Yün shi-liu chou* 燕雲十六州), 615, 627, 633
- and Chao K'uang-yin 趙匡胤, 12
- enumerated, 87
- and Hui-tsung, 28
- and Kao Jung, 129
- and the Khitan 契丹, 206, 354
- and the Later Chou 後周, 4, 209
- and the Liao 遼, 16
- location of, 4
- second invasion of (986), 14
- and Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 87
- and the Sung 宋, 247, 249
- and T'ai-ts'u, 20, 221
- T'ai-tsung's campaign against, 248
- Sixth Platoon Bridge, 808
- "smashing the pasture and grain" (*ta ts'ao-yü*), 103
- Smith, Paul J., 24, 619
- Sogabe Shizuo 曽我部靜雄, 348, 446, 907
- soil. *See* agriculture; flooding
- Somers, Robert, 136–137
- Son of Heaven, 820, 854
- "sons," imperial (*huang-tzu* 皇子), 94, 258, 914. *See also* adoption; heir apparent (*t'ai-tzu* 太子)
- "South before North" strategy, 209
- south of the passes. *See* Kuan-nan 關南
- South Seas, 184–186
- Southeast Asia, 253
- Southern Capital (Yu-chou 幽州), 310

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1073

- Southern Han dynasty (917–79), 5, 133, 153–155, 170, 195, 203–204, 209, 220, 224, 227
 local emperors in, 53
 and T'ai-tsü, 14
- Southern Kingdoms (891–79), 4, 43, 206
 bureaucratic governance in the, 189–191
 components to collapse of, 197–205
 early political recruitment in, 158–163
 interstate mutations in the, 194, 197
 10th century importance of, 135
- Southern Sung dynasty (1127–1279), 644
 financial administration of, 697
 Mongol conquest of the (1279), 1
 salt and tea monopolies of, 698
 trends in the fall of, 36–37
 weakness of later, 913
 wealth in, 907
- Southern T'ang 南唐 dynasty (937–75)
 and Chien-chou 建州, 10
 demographics of, 227–228
 and Hsü Chih-kao 徐知誥, 163
 and the Later Chou 後周, 131
 and the Later Shu 後蜀, 124–127
 and Li Pien 李昪 (Hsü Chih-kao 徐知誥), 167
 around 951, 10–11
 and T'ai-tsü, 14
 and the traditional elite, 160
 along the Yangtze River 長江揚子江, 195
 and the Wu 吳, 5
 sovereigns and sovereignties. *See specific actors and reigns*
 “specialist learning” (*chuan-men hsiieh 專門學*), 693
 “specialized and obscure learning” (*chuan-men ch'ü-hsiieh 專門曲學*), ban against, 786
 spices, 184, 185, 186, 684
Spring and Autumn Annals (Ch'un-ch'u 春秋), 689
 “spurious learning.” *See Tao-hsüeh 道學 (Learning of the Way)*
 spy. *See specific actor*
ssu2 寺. *See* Buddhism, temples and monasteries of
 Ssu-chou 潘州, 126, 713, 714, 718, 794
ssu-k'ou ts'an-chüin 司寇參軍. *See* Administrator for Public Order
Ssu-k'u ch'üan-shu, xi
 Ssu-ma K'ang, 479
 Ssu-ma Kuang 司馬光 (1019–86), 493, 693
 on administrative reorganization, 464
 and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung, 542
 alleged treachery of, 541
 on border policy, 489
 on bureaucratic decision-making, 356–357
 on catchment basins in Wu-Yüeh 吳越, 173
 censorial indictments of, 537
 and Chang Tun 章惇, 493
 and the Chen-tsung conspiracy, 261
 on Chih-kao, 167
 and the Ch'ing-li 慶曆 reforms (1043–45), 364
 and Ch'iu Fu 裴甫, 137
 on commercial importance of tribute, 179
 on compulsory drill, 445
 criticized for Hsi Hsia 西夏 accommodation, 537
 and Dowager Empress Hsüan-jen 宣仁太后, 487–509
 on economics, 387
 and Empress Kao 高后, 338
 and “engrossers,” 442
 on the Finance Planning Commission, 380
 on fiscal expenditures, 355

- Ssu-ma Kuang 司馬光 (1019–86) (*cont.*)
 funeral of, 514
 and government usury, 414
 and Green Sprouts policies, 417
 on hired-service, 437
 and Hsing Shu 邢恕, 479
 later years of, 480–483
 on legitimacy, 52, 85
 on Li Ching 李璟, 199
 and Liu An-shih 劉安世, 350
 and Liu Ch'ung 劉崇, 113
 on Liu Ts'ung-hsiao 留從效, 169
 on militarization of the peasantry, 494
 on mutual aid, 435
 and the New Policies, 25, 448
 on open-sea trade, 178
 opposed to service-exemption policy, 400
 on place of money in the economy, 438
 political agenda of his anti-reform coalition of, 494–505
 posthumous honors recinded, 538
 on sericulture in Hunan 湖南, 176
 and Shen-tsung, 354–355, 361, 454, 465, 478–479
 and Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 94
 stripped of prestige titles, 541, 574
 and Su Ch'e 蘇軾, 345
 on Sui-te 緿德, 23
 on T'an-chou 潭州 (Ch'ang-sha 長沙), 198
 on Tangut threat, 478
 on taxation, 172
 and Te-kuang 德光, 102
 in 1085, 498
 and Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 491
 and Wang An-shih 王安石, 370–371, 373, 377, 383, 453, 490
 on Wang Chien 王建, 159, 162, 180, 195
 and Wang Lu 王轄, 137
 and Wang Yüan-chieh, 164
 on Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 145
 on Yin Fan-cheng, 202
 and Ying-tsung, 340, 341–343
Ssu-nung ssu 司農寺. *See* Court of Agricultural Supervision
ssu-tang 私黨. *See* clique
 stages, ritual, 609
 stalwart (*chuang-ting* 壯丁), 407, 420, 427
 standards, Confucian, 777
 Standon, Naomi, 5
 stars, falling, 844
 starvation. *See* famine
 state (*chien pang-chia* 建邦家), 302
 budget, 77
 building
 in Inner Asia, 15–17
 in the north and south, 1–11
 on the Steppe, 15–19
 finances, under Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源, 77–78
 superior (*shang-kuo* 上國), 684
 vassal, 718, 805
 State Council. *See* Council of State
State History (*kuo-shih* 國史), 558
 State Meeting Hall (*Tu-t'ang*) 都堂, 240
 State Trade (*shib-i* 市易), 429–435, 443
 policy (*shib-i fa* 市易法), 404, 449–450, 497–498
 revival of, under the Shao-sheng 紹聖, 546–548
 State Trade Agency (*Shib-i ssu* 市易司), 449, 497, 498
 State Trade Bureau (*Shib-i wu* 市易務), 406, 429–431, 443
 revival of, under the Shao-sheng 紹聖, 547
 revival of branches of, under the Shao-sheng 紹聖, 547

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1075

- State Treasury (*Tao-tsang k'u*), Southern Storehouse of the (*Tso-tsung nan-k'u*), 751–752 statecraft, “technology of,” 17 status, hereditary, 238–240 stele, 697 blacklist, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580 Steppe, state building on the, 15–19 storehouse, prefectoral public (*kung-shih-k'u* 公使庫), 425 Storehouse for the Reserves of the State Treasury (*Tso-tsang feng-chuang k'u* 左藏封樞庫), 751. *See also Sealed Treasury* storms. *See* disasters, flooding, portents “strengthening the superior men and illuminating the petty ones” (*ch'ang chün-tzu, hsiao hsiao-jen* 長君子消小人), 363 “strengthening the trunk and weakening the branches” (*ch'iang-kan jo-chih* 強幹弱枝), 670 “strengthening the walls and clearing out the countryside” (*chien-pi ch'ing yeh* 堅壁清野), 469, 475 Strickmann, Michel, 610, 613 “strong trunk and weak branches” policy, 269 student. *See* Imperial University (*T'ai-hsüeh* 太學) Su, Prince, 647 Su Ch'e 蘇轍 (1039–1112), 175, 345, 370, 379, 380, 387, 395, 442, 478, 491, 493, 503, 504, 507, 511, 538 and amnesty for Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 528 banishment of, 542 on drafted service, 503 opposition to reformist revival, 534 and Teng Wen-po, 527 on Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確 and Chang Tan, 499 Su-chou 蘇州, 140, 146, 181–182. *See also* P'ing-chiang 平江 Ts'ai Ching's Buddhist temple in, 604 Su-chou2 宿州, 49, 717, 795 Su Feng-chi 蘇逢吉, 107, 108, 109–110 Su Hsün 蘇洵 (1009–66), 345, 387 Su Hsün-ch'in, 299 *Su-li so* 訴理所. *See* Investigation and Prosecution Bureau Su Shen 蘇紳, 299, 305 Su Shih 蘇軾 (1037–1101), 345, 370, 372, 380, 421, 478, 481, 491, 503–504, 507, 511, 512–513, 516, 521, 538, 575 banishment of, 542 and Ch'eng I 程頤, 514 exonerated by Hsüan-jen, 516 on political conformity, 520–521 rehabilitation of, 564 and Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 523 Su Shih-tan 蘇師旦 (d. 1207), 791, 807 Chin demand for the head of, 811–812 *Su-shui chi-wen* 淚水記聞. *See Record by the Su River* Su Shun-ch'in 蘇舜欽, 323 Su Sung 蘇頌 and “factional treachery,” 529 and Shen-tsung, 454 Su Yao-ch'in, 298 *Suan-hsüeh* 算學. *See* School of Mathematics Sub-council for the Compilation of Secretariat Regulations (*pien-hsiu chung-shu t'iao-li-ssu* 遍修中書條例司), 381 subject (*ch'en* 臣), 94, 124, 303, 315, 682 subordination, 112 succession, lack of patrilineal, 913–915 “Succession to the Way” (*tao-i'ung*), 900 Sui-chou 綏州 (Shan-hsi, later Sui-te chün), 23, 251, 354, 469

- Sui-chou 隋州, 827
- sui-kung* 歲貢. *See* tribute, annual
- sui-pi* 歲幣. *See* payments, annual
- Sui-te chün, 23, 469, 470. *See also* Sui-chou 緬州
- suicide, 944-945, 956, 957, 958
- Sun Chin 孫近, 679, 680
- Sun Fang-chien 孫方簡, 101, 106, 113
- Sun Fu 孫甫, and prefecture schools, 318
- Sun Hu-ch'en (d. 1276), 932
- Sun Ju 孫儒, 135, 146-147, 149
- Sun K'o-k'uan 孫克寬, 851
- Sun Mien, 294, 317, 332-333
- Sun O 孫謄, 545
- Sun Shih 孫奭 (962-1033), 272, 282, 284, 294
- Sun Tsu-te 孫祖德, 287
- Sung 宋, Empress (951-95), 242
- Sung Che-tsung 宋哲宗 (r. 1085-1100), 24. *See also* Chao Hsü2 趙煦
- Sung Chen-tsung 宋真宗 (r. 997-1022), 20. *See also* Chao heng 趙恒
- Sung Ch'i 宋祁, 299, 318, 319, 323
- Sung Ch'i-ch'iu 宋齊丘, 161, 176, 193
- Sung Chiang 宋江, 588, 626-627
- Sung-Chin Alliance (1115-23), 627-633
- Sung-Chin campaign of 1163, 715
- Sung-Chin peace
- arguments against, 678-679
 - arguments in favor of, 679
 - treaty (1138), 682
 - treaty (1141), 684
- Sung-Chin war
- first (1123-26), 633-639, 827-830
 - loyalist armies in, 827, 828
 - second (1156-57), 639-643
 - 1217 conflict, 822
- Sung Ch'in-tsung 欽宗 (r. 1126-27), 28
- Sung Ching 宋京, 939
- Sung dynastic history* (*Sung shih* 宋史), 259, 273, 376, 557, 594, 809, 810, 851, 860, 863, 901, 916, 918, 929, 939
- Sung dynasty (960-1279), 1, 247
- administrative systems of, 457-459
 - conservatism in later, 712
 - 1129 reform of central government of, 652
 - founding and consolidation of the (960-1000), 11-14
 - "golden age" of, 538
 - imperial tombs, 959. *See also* "Precious Mountain" (*Pao-shan* 寶山)
 - and the Mongols 蒙古人, 850-852
 - and multistate system, 20-24
 - name derivation of, 11
 - organization of territorial administration under the, 231-232
 - political culture of, 498
 - reconstruction of, under Hsiao-tsung (1165-73), 720-737
 - social turmoil before the establishment of the, 1
 - 1234 campaign against the Chin, 861-863
- Sung Ho-tung circuit, 4
- Sung Hsi-ho circuit, xi
- Sung-Hsi Hsia peace treaty, 507-508
- terms of, 506
- Sung Hsiang 宋庠, 323
- Sung Hsiao-tsung 宋孝宗 (r. 1162-89), 13. *See also* Chao Po-ts'ung; Chao Yüan
- Sung Hui-tsung 宋徽宗 (r. 1100-26), 24.
- See also* Chao Chi 趙佶; Prince of Tuan 端王
- Sung hui-yao* 宋會要. *See* Essential regulations of the Sung (*Sung hui-yao*)
- Sung Jen-tsung 宋仁宗 (1010-63, r. 1022-63), 20, 300. *See also* Chao Chen 趙禎 (Sung Jen-tsung 宋仁宗, 1010-63, r. 1022-63)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1077

- Sung Kao-tsung 宋高宗 (r. 1127–62), 28.
See also Chao Kou 趙構; Prince K'ang
- Sung Kuang-nan East circuit, xi
- Sung Kung-tsung 宋恭宗 (r. 1274–76).
- Sung Li-tsung 宋理宗 (r. 1224–64). *See* Chao Yün
- Sung-Liao relations, 248–260, 343–344
- Sung-Mongol campaign (1235), 864
- Sung Ning-tsung 宋寧宗 (r. 1194–1224), 32. *See also* Chao K'uo 趙擴
- Sung Shen-tsung 宋神宗 (r. 1067–85), 22. *See also* Chao Hsü 趙頊
- Sung shib* 宋史. *See* Sung dynastic history
- Sung Shou 宋綬, 287, 290, 293, 301, 307
- Sung ssu ta shu* 宋四大書. *See* Four great compendia of the Sung dynasty
- Sung T'ai-tsu 宋太祖 (Chao K'uang-yin 趙匡胤, 927–76, r. 960–76), 11, 202, 203–205. *See also* Chao K'uang-yin 趙匡胤
- Sung T'ai-tsung 宋太宗 (Prince K'ang, r. 976–97), 11. *See* Chao K'uang-i 趙匡義; Chao Kuang-i 趙光義
- Sung-Tangut conflict (1101–19), 615–616
- Sung Ti-ping. *See* Chao Ping 趙昺
- Sung Tu-tsung 宋度宗 (r. 1264–74). *See* Chao Ch'i 趙禕; Chao Kuang-i 趙光義
- Sung Tuan-tsung 宋端宗 (r. 1276–78). *See also* Chao Shih 趙是
- Sung Ying-tsung 宋英宗 (r. 1063–67), 20. *See also* Chao Shu 趙曙; Chao Tsung-shih 趙宗實
- Superintendance for State Trade (*tu-t'i-chü shih-i-ssu* 都提舉市易司), 382, 431
- Superintendance for Tea and Horses (*tu-ta t'i-chü ch'a-ma-ssu* 都大提舉茶馬司), 382, 431
- Superior Guard (*tu-pao* 都保), 408
- Superior Guard Leader (*pao-cheng* 保正), 408
- superior or deputy superior guard leader (*tu-fu pao-cheng* 都副保正), 410, 428
- superior state (*shang-kuo* 上國), 684
- Supervising Secretary (*chi-shih-chung* 紿事中), 516
- Supervisor of the Finance Commission (*san-ssu shih* 三司使), 115. *See also* finance commissioner
- supply lines, 475, 551
- supply master (*ya-ch'ien* 衙前), 351, 398–399, 403
- conscription, 399
- replacing, 424–425
- volunteer (*ch'ang-ming ya-ch'ien* 長名衙前), 399
- Supreme Capital. *See* capital
- surplus emergency fee surtax (*k'u'an-sheng ch'ien* 寬剩錢), 401, 422, 441–442, 546, 592
- surrender. *See specific actor, event, or location*
- surtax, 430
- head (*'ou-tzu* 頭子), 422
- survey
- cadastral, 496, 590
- “square-fields” (*fang-t'ien* 方田)
- cadastral, 449
- suzerainty, tributary, 204
- swamp fever (*she-chang* 涉瘴),
- sycophant (*ning-hsing* 倦幸), 584
- system, rotation (*keng-hsü fa* 更戌法), 218
- Szechwan 四川, 868, 869
- Basin, 10
- Chia Ssu-tao 賈似道 and defense of, 918
- division of, 164
- financial independence of, 697–699
- and the Later Shu 後蜀, 223
- Mongol assaults on, 33, 35, 889
- peasant rebellion in (993), 256–257
- physical isolation of, 196
- population movement to, 134
- revenues from, 908

- Szechwan 四川 (*cont.*)
 salt and tea production in, 698
 service-exemption policy in, 402, 423
 and Shen-tsung, 466
 silk production in, 175
 and state trade bureaus, 431
 strategic importance of, 659
 and the Sung, 27, 202–203, 328–329
 tea cultivation in, 175
 tea monopoly in, 439, 455, 471
 1207 insurrection in, 795–812
 Wang Chien in, 43, 48, 50, 53,
 135
 and the Wang family, 155–157
 and Wang P'u 王朴, 209
 Szechwan-Shan-hsi Tea and Horse
 Agency, 471
 Ta Ch'i, 674–677
 Ta-ch'ing Pavilion 大慶殿, 299, 346
Ta Chou hsing-t'ung 大周刑統. *See* Law
 Codes of the Great Chou
 Ta Ch'u 大楚 (Greater Ch'u), 643,
 646–647, 649, 657–659
Ta-chung hsiang-fu 大中祥符. *See* Great
 Centrality and Auspicious
 Talisman
ta-fu 夫夫. *See* grandee
Ta Hsia huang-ti 大夏皇帝. *See* Emperor of
 the Great Hsia
ta-hsing 大姓. *See* names, great
Ta-hsüeh 大學, 815, 902
 Ta-li 大理 (Ta-li kuo), 33, 331, 869
Ta-li ssu 大理司. *See* Court of Judicial
 Review
 Ta-ming 大名, 311, 641
 Ta-ming fu 大名府, 311
 Ta-pa Mountains 大巴山, 10
ta-pao 大保. *See* large guard
ta-pao-chang 大保長. *See* large guard chiefs
 Ta-p'eng, King of (*Ta-p'eng wang*
 大彭王), 158
Ta-p'eng wang 大彭王. *See* Ta-p'eng, King
 of
 Ta-san Pass 大散關, 813
- ta-she* 大赦. *See* acts of grace, grand
ta-sheng 大晟 (great brightness musical
 intervals), 608
 Ta Shu 大蜀, 257
 Ta-ting 大定, 630
Ta tsung-cheng ssu 大宗正司. *See* Chief
 Office of Imperial Clan Affairs
 Ta-t'ung 大同, 42, 81, 629. *See also*
 Yün-chou2 雲州
ta yüan-shuai 大元帥. *See* marshal, grand
 Ta Yüeh 大越, 253
 Ta-Yüeh Lo-p'ing 大越羅平, 143
 Ta'an, 864
 taboo, 282, 291, 342
 Tai-chou 代州, 298, 299
 T'ai-chou 台州, 625
 on an overland trade route, 182, 210
T'ai-fu ssu 太府寺. *See* Court of the
 Imperial Treasury
 T'ai-hang Mountains 太行山, 42
T'ai-bsüeh 太學. *See* Imperial University
T'ai-miao 太廟. *See* Imperial Ancestral
 Temple
 T'ai-p'ing hsing-kuo era 太平興國
 (Ascendent State in Grand
 Tranquility, 976–84), 242
T'ai-p'ing kuang-chi 太平廣記. *See*
 Extensive records of the *T'ai-p'ing*
 hsing-kuo 太平興國 era
T'ai-p'ing yü-lan 太平御覽. *See* Imperial
 encyclopedia of the *T'ai-p'ing*
 hsing-kuo 太平興國 era
t'ai-shang huang-ti 太上皇帝. *See* Emperor
 Emeritus
t'ai-shih 太師. *See* Senior Preceptor
 T'ai-tsu (Chao K'uang-yin 趙匡胤,
 927–76, r. 960–76), 206, 242,
 244, 247, 248, 653, 659, 709,
 843, 914, 961
 efforts at unification, 224–229
 and the subordination of the military
 to bureaucratic control, 12–14
 T'ai-tsung (Chao K'uang-i 趙匡義,
 939–97, r. 976–97, 13–14, 20,

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1079

- 238, 285, 336, 354, 609, 653,
 709, 843. *See* T'ang T'ai-tsung
 唐太宗 (r. 626-49)
 literary pursuits of, 254-256
 war under, 242-260
tai-tzu 太子. *See* heir apparent
 T'ai-yüan 太原 (Shansi 山西), 4, 47, 49,
 62, 66, 85, 112, 120, 226, 228,
 248, 637, 640-641, 644. *See also*
 Ping-chou 并州
 by 895, 42
 fall of (1127), 646
 seige of, 86
 T'an Ch'i-hsiang, xi
 T'an-chou 潭州 (Ch'ang-sha 長沙), 148,
 149, 198, 224, 627, 933, 940,
 957
 T'an-chou2 檀州, 87, 632
tang 黨. *See* chiu-tang; 舊黨 factionalism;
 "factions (*tang* 黨) and cliques"
 (*p'eng-tang* 朋黨); hsin-tang; 新黨
 p'eng-tang; 朋黨 ssu-tang 私黨
tang-chi 黨籍. *See* blacklist, partisan
 Tang-yu, 331
 T'ang Ai-ti 唐哀帝 (r. 904-7), 48
 T'ang Chao-tsung 唐昭宗 (r. 888-904),
 42, 188
 T'ang Chieh (1010-69), 363, 369
 T'ang Chiung, 447
 T'ang-chou 唐州, 180, 713, 714, 718,
 795, 828, 856-858, 864
 T'ang Chuang-tsung 唐莊宗 (r. 923-26).
See also Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗
 T'ang 唐 dynasty (618-907), 1,
 204
 code, 57
 consequences of the collapse of power
 in the, 1-4
 early tenth century political control
 in, 38-132
 state building in the north and south,
 1-11
 T'ang Fei-ti 唐廢帝 (r. 934-36). *See* Li
 Ts'ung-k'o 李從珂
 T'ang Hsi-tsung 唐僖宗 (r. 873-88),
 155
 T'ang Hsien-tsung 唐憲宗 (r. 805-820),
 39
 T'ang Hsüan-tsung 唐玄宗 (r. 712-56),
 607, 874
 T'ang Kao-tsung, 522
 T'ang K'o, 641
 T'ang 唐 mandate, 167, 189
 T'ang Min-ti 唐閔帝 (r. 933-34). *See* Li
 Ts'ung-hou 李從厚
 T'ang Ming-tsung 唐明宗 (r. 926-33). *See*
 Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源
 T'ang Mu-tsung 唐穆宗 (r. 820-24), 39
 T'ang Pang-yen, 739
 T'ang T'ai-tsung 唐太宗 (r. 626-49), 59,
 361, 689
 T'ang Te-tsung 唐德宗 (r. 779-805),
 39
 T'ang Yü, 960
 Tangut Hsi Hsia. *See* Hsi Hsia
Tao 道 (the Way), 123
Tao-hsüeh 道學 (Learning of the Way),
 28, 31, 35-36, 487, 510-511,
 512, 607, 692, 693, 769-770,
 777, 781, 844, 876-877. *See also*
 Neo-Confucianism
 ban against, 32, 783, 787-789
 political nature of, 788
 denounced as "spurious teachings"
 (*wei-hsüeh* 假學), 32, 787
 and frugality, 784
 and Han T'o-chou 韓侂胄, 813
 and Imperial University, 877,
 897-906
 and Kuang-tsung, 785, 813
 and Li-tsung, 874
 and Ning-tsung, 785
 revanchist orientation of, 791
 second ban against, 786
 Tao Jing-shen, 29-30
tao-shih 道士. *See* Taoism 道教, clergy of
tao-te 道德 (moral power). *See* virtue
Tao-tsang. *Taoist Canon*, 222, 225

- Tao-tsang k'u.* See State Treasury
- Tao-tsang feng-chuang k'u 左藏封倉庫.* See Sealed Treasury (Storehouse for the Reserves of the State Treasury)
- tao-t'ung.* See "Succession to the Way"
- T'ao, Dowager Empress, 342
- T'ao Chieh-fu 陶節夫, 619–620
- T'ao-chou 洮州 (Lin-t'an), 660
- T'ao River, 23, 466
- T'ao Ya 陶雅, 144
- Taoism 道教, 787
- Canon of (*Tao-tsung*), 610
- clergy of (*tao-shih*), 613
- Divine Empyrean (*Shen-hsiao*) sect of, 602, 607, 611, 612
- Hui-tsung's promotion of, 602, 606–614
- Ling-pao* (sect), 611
- temples and monasteries of (*kung3, kuan2*), 613
- Taoist canon of the longevity of the Cheng-bo reign (Cheng-bo wan-shou Tao-tsung)*, 611
- tattoo, 49, 60, 223, 332, 410, 413
- tax, 94, 99, 117, 161, 201, 203, 257, 283, 313
- acreage and fermentation, 77
- adult male cash (*shen-ting ch'ien*)
 身丁錢, 194
- adult male salt cash (*ting-k'ou yen ch'ien*), 194
- agricultural, 593, 699
- autumn, 77, 299
- collected, 326–328, 344
- in cash, 193, 327
- in grain, 193, 222, 327
- in rice, 193
- in silk, 193
- in textiles, 176, 193
- commercial,
 government income from, 731
- increase in, under Kao-tsung, 701
- double (*liang-shui* 兩稅), 191
- head (*t'ou-tzu* 頭子), 192–194. *See also ting-k'ou ch'ien* 丁口錢
- levied in rice, 194
- increase, from fees, 439
- land, 77, 128, 192, 205, 250, 327
- levies on the wealthy,
- monetary head (*ting-k'ou ch'ien* 丁口錢), 193
- pressing (*chia-tou* 甲頭), 427, 428
- reductions, 291
- remission of, 283, 660, 731
- under Southern Sung, 907
- stations (*ch'ang* 場), 189
- supplementary, 731
- Tax Bureau, 261
- taxation, 126
- agricultural, 191
- after the An Lu-shan 安祿山 rebellions, 39, 40
- causes of excessive, 319
- and Chang Fang-p'ing 張方平, 387
- and the Ch'i Fu revolt, 136
- and concealed landholdings, 208
- direct, 16, 17
- effect of Hsi Hsia war on, 348
- and fiscal intendants, 232
- indirect, 181
- and Jen-tsung 仁宗, 308, 319
- and the Later Chou 後周, 208
- and Li Ssu-chao 李嗣昭, 58
- and Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源, 75
- and Liu Ch'ung 劉崇, 113
- remission of, 327
- and Sang Wei-han 桑維翰, 100
- in the Southern Kingdoms, 191–194
- and southern state-building, 10
- and T'ai-ts'u 太祖, 228
- unequal, 326
- and Wang An-shih 王安石, 24
- and Wang P'u's memorial, 123
- Te-an, 795
- Te-chou 德州, 62, 123

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1081

- Te-kuang 德光 (Liao T'ai-tsung 遼太宗, 926–47), 81, 87–90, 97–98, 100, 102–105
- Te-sheng 德勝, 66, 94
- Te-shou Palace, 754
- tea, 174–175, 180, 225, 284, 314, 684 certificates (*ch'a-yin* 茶引), 594 commercial permits for sale of, 430 government, 284–285 and the Huai-nan 淮南 campaign, 127 and the Later Chou 後周, 223 merchants guild (*hang*), 407 monopoly, 175, 327, 348, 351, 590, 593, 594–595, 698 Southern Sung tax on, 698 in Szechwan, 698 and Tseng Pu 曾布, 432 technologies of resource appropriation, secular development of, 16
- Temple of Confucius, 815, 902 temples, ancestral. *See specific dynasty, lineage, or ruler*
- Temüjin (r. 1206–27). *See* Chinggis khan (Temüjin, r. 1206–27)
- “ten brothers,” 240–241
- Ten Kingdoms (c. 907–79), 1, 133
- tenant-farmers, 699
- Teng-chou 登州, 178 on an overland trade route, 182
- Teng-chou2 鄭州, 713, 714, 718, 828
- Teng Ch'u-na 鄭處訥, 149, 150
- Teng Jo-shui, 842, 843
- Teng Jun-fu 鄭潤甫 (1027–94), 425, 437, 456. *See also* Teng Wen-po
- Teng Tsung-liang, 287
- Teng Wan (1028–86), 382, 438, 451
- Teng Wen-po 鄭溫伯 (Teng Jun-fu 鄭潤甫), 526
- Teng Yu-lung, 792, 806
- T'eng-chou 藤州, 331
- territorial consolidation, and centralized political authority in the north, 4
- terrorism, economic, 171
- testament, imperial (*i-shu*), 836
- textiles, 136, 176, 223
- thanks for punishment (*men-hsieh* 門謝), 463
- Three Departments (*san-sheng* 三省), 461–463, 716, 723, 725 of state (*shang-shu sheng* 尚書省), 462
- Three Echelons (*san-p'an yüan*), 460
- Three Gorges, 10
- Three Halls policy (*san-she fa* 三舍法), 585, 586, 588
- Three Institutes of History, Literature, and Worthies (*San-kuan* 三館), 352
- Three Military Bureaus (*san-ya* 三衙), 218, 235
- “three obediences” (*san-ts'ung* 三從), 286
- “Three-Spear” Ch'en (Ch'en san-ch'iang 陳三槍), 911
- Three Teachings, 787
- “three traitors” (*san-chien* 三姦), 493
- “three worthies” (*san-hsien*), 493
- Thunder Rites (*lei-fa*), 611
- Ti, Lady, 530
- Ti Ch'ing, 305, 332, 333–334
- ti-fen ch'i-chuang lin-li* 地分耆壯鄰里. *See local elder/stalwart township plan*
- Ti-ping (Chao Ping 趙昺, 1272–79, r. 1278–79). *See* Chao Ping 趙昺 (Ti-ping, 1272–79, r. 1278–79)
- Ti-tang so* 抵擋所. *See* Central Collateralized Loan Bureau
- t'i-chii chiao-yüeh-shih* 提舉教閱使. *See intendants for military drill and review*
- t'i tien hsing-yü* 提點刑獄. *See intendants, judicial*
- Tibet, 26, 27, 33 as warlord state, 206, 354
- t'ieh-she* 貼射. *See certificate of verification*
- Tien-ch'ien ssu* 殿前司. *See* Palace Command

- tien-chung shih yü-shih* 殿中侍御史. *See*
 Palace Censor
- tien-hu* 佃戶. *See* household, tenant
- tien-li*. *See* bookkeepers
- T'ien Chün 田顥, 144
- t'ien-hsia* 天下. *See* “all-under-heaven”
- T'ien-hsin*. *See* Celestial Heart
- T'ien Ling-tzu 田令孜, 155, 157
- T'ien-men Mountain 天門山, on an
 overland trade route, 182
- T'ien-sheng 天聖 (Celestial Sageness,
 1023-32), 282
- T'ien-shui, 795
- T'ien-tu range, 551
- “time for doing great deeds is right
 now” (*ta yu-wei chih shih*
 大有為之時), 24, 362
- tin, 225
- ting*. *See* tripods, ritual (*ting*)
- Ting-chou 定州, 79, 99, 101, 106, 211,
 264, 298, 310
- Ting-ch'uan-chai 定川寨, 309, 314, 317,
 321
- Ting Hui 丁會, 51-52
- ting-k'ou ch'ien* 丁口錢. *See* tax, monetary
- ting-k'ou yen ch'ien*. *See* tax, adult male
 salt cash
- Ting-nan 定難, 4, 54, 130, 251
- Ting Ta-ch'üan, 888-890, 892, 896,
 904, 905, 906, 925
- Ting Tu, 307, 313
- Ting Wei 丁謂 (966-1037), 272,
 274-275, 276, 277, 280-281,
 525
- T'ing-chou 汀州, 151, 168, 169, 702,
 911
- T'ing-mei 廷美 (947-84), 843
- titles
 prestige (*chieh-kuan* 隕官), 460,
 538
 rectification of office (*cheng kuan-ming*
 正官名), 459
- T'o-pa 拓拔, 4
- tombs, imperial, 739
- Topically-arranged history of the Sung*
 (*Sung-shih chi-shih pen-mo*
 宋史紀事本末), 754
- tortoise shell, 184
- torture. *See* specific actor or torture
- Tou-lu Ko 豆盧革, 73
- t'ou-tzu* 頭子 fees, 441
- trade
 coastal interkingdom, 181-182
 direct, 177-183
 east-west, 183
 inland interkingdom, 182-183
 internal, 177
 interregional, 177
 kinds of, 177
 maritime, 253
 networks, 174
 north-south, 183
 private, 180
 Sino-Tibetan, 404
 state (*shih-i* 市易), 403-407
 transshipment, 177, 184-186
- Trade Monopoly Office (*Chüeh-i yüan*
 權易院), 185
- trading agencies, 180, 183
- transit charges, 181
- “treacherous ministers” (*chien-ch'en* 肆臣),
 557, 638-639
- treason, 693. *See also* allegiance; loyalty
- treasuries, types of, during Sung dynasty,
 750-752. *See also* specific treasury
- Treaty of 1005 (*Shan-yüan* 潼淵), 20-24
- Treaty of 1044, 22
- Treaty of 1141 (Chin Sung Treaty),
 30-31, 716, 735
- Treaty of 1165, 704, 715-720, 735
- tribal troops (*fan-ping* 蕃兵), frontier. *See*
 army, frontier tribal troops
- tribe. *See* specific group
- “tributary goods and private
 merchandise” (*kung-wu ssu-shang*
 貢物私商), 179

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1083

- tribute
 annual (*sui-kung* 歲貢), 223, 303, 344, 549, 645, 675, 684, 719. *See also* payments, annual
 annual (*sui-pi* 歲幣), 805, 806, 811, 865
 biannual, 819
 ceramics in, 177
 Ch'ien Ch'u 錢倅, to T'ai-tsü 太祖, 228
 Ch'ien Liu 錢鏐, to the Later Liang, 178
 Ching-nan's seizure of, 181
 "equalized tribute measure" (*chiün-shu fa* 均輸法), 403
 and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 127
 and Kuo Wei 郭威, 115
 Later Liang 後梁, 67
 and Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源, 77
 Liu Chih-yüan 劉知遠, to Te-kuang 德光, 104
 metal-ware in, 177
 peace payment, 821
 Shen-chih 審知, to northern dynasties, 178
 Southern Han 南漢 and Wu-Yüeh 吳越, to K'ai-feng 開封, 220
 Southern T'ang 南唐, to Later Chou 後周, 127
 Ssu-ma Kuang 司馬光 on importance of, 179
 Sung 宋, to the Chin, 30
 Sung 宋, to Liao 遼, 268, 311
 from the Sung to the Chin, 629, 630, 632, 634
 Tung Ch'ang 董昌, to the T'ang 唐, 143
 Wang Jung 王鎔, to Chu Wen 朱溫, 59
 tribute, 310
 grain, 320
 Inner Asian state dependence on, 16
 Tribute Transport and Distribution measure (*chiün-shu fa* 均輸法), 378, 392
 tripods, ritual (*ting*), 608
- Tsa-mai ch'ang* 雜賣場 (General Sales Market). *See* General Sales and General Purchase Markets
Tsa-mai wu 雜買務 (General Purchase Market). *See* General Sales and General Purchase Markets
tsai-hsiang 宰相. *See* counselor, chief
 Ts'ai Ch'eng-hsi, 453, 455
 Ts'ai Ch'i, 285, 290, 293
Ts'ai-chien chü. *See* Office of Economizing
 Ts'ai Ching 蔡京 (1047–1126), 26, 30, 32, 464, 478, 536, 565, 638, 639, 693, 786, 787
 and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung, 542
 ancestral graves of, 625
 and drafted service, 545
 educational reforms of, 585, 586–587, 589
 fiscal policies and revenue extraction, 589–596
 on Green Sprouts revival, 546
 and the hired service exemption, 544
 and Hui-tsung, 556
 manipulation of Hui-tsung, 570
 ministry of, under Hui-tsung, 570–639
 plot to depose Chao Hsü2, 486
 proscriptions against the Yüan-yu anti-reformers, 554, 786
 and the restoration of the New Policies, 590–596, 599–600
 and social welfare, 596–600
 as a "traitorous monster," 570
 as a "treacherous minister" (*chien-ch'en*), 560
 and Tseng Pu 曾布, 554
 Ts'ai-chou 蔡州, 43, 794, 856–858
 Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確 (1037–93), 25, 30, 455–457, 462, 472, 478, 479–480, 481, 491
 and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung, 542

- Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確 (1037-93) (*cont.*)
 amnesty for, 528
 anti-reform hostility towards,
 493-494
 banishment of, 521-525, 543
 plot to depose Chao Hsü2 趙煦, 486
 and Ssu-ma Kuang 司馬光, 488
 and Su Ch'e 蘇軾, 499
 and Wang Kuei 王桂,
 Ts'ai Hsiang 蔡襄, 298, 320, 463
 and Shih Chieh 石介, 321
 Ts'ai Pien 蔡卞, 536, 553, 565
 and Chao Chi 趙佶, Prince of Tuan,
 553
 and Tseng Pu 曾布, 553, 554
 Ts'ai-shih, battle of (1162), 704-707,
 709, 713
 Ts'ai T'ao, 584
 Ts'ai Wei, 542
 Ts'ai Yu (1077-1126), 632
 Ts'ai Yu-hsüeh 蔡幼學 (1154-1217),
 788, 790, 817
ts'an-chih cheng-shih 參知政事. *See* assistant
 councilors of state
 Tsang Hsün 藏循, 182
 Tsang-ti-ho 藏底河, 620
 Ts'ang-chou 滄州, 47, 51-52, 60, 62, 63,
 72
ts'ang-fa. *See* Granary System
 Tsao-tso chü 造作局. *See* Fabrication
 Bureaus
 Tsao-yang, 795, 827
 Ts'ao, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*)
 336, 340-341. *See also* Ts'ao,
 Empress
 Ts'ao, Empress, 293, 334, 337. *See also*
 Ts'ao, Dowager Empress
 Ts'ao, Lady, 293, 809
 Ts'ao Ch'eng, 666
 Ts'ao Han 曹翰 (924-92), 221
 Ts'ao Li-yung 曹利用 (?-1029), 266,
 281
 Ts'ao Pin 曹彬 (931-99), 226, 293
ts'ao-tsei 草賊. *See* bandit, rural
 Ts'ao Yu-wen, 864
 Tse-chou 漳州, 11, 47, 49, 66, 105
tsei-shuai 賊帥. *See* bandit “leader”
Tsei Wang Pa 賊王八. *See* Bandit Wang
 Eight
 Ts'en-chiang 潭江, 182
 Tseng K'ai 曾開, 680, 681
 Tseng Kung (1019-83), 351, 400
 Tseng Kung-liang 曾公亮 (998-1078),
 324, 337, 338, 342, 345, 346,
 357, 361, 363, 368, 369, 371,
 372-373, 374, 378
 and prefecture schools, 318
 and Wang An-shih 王安石, 447
 Tseng Pu 曾布 (1036-1107), 377, 381,
 382, 402, 407, 420, 432, 449,
 450, 536, 566-571
 centralist politics of, 566-567, 568,
 569
 and Chang Tun 章惇, 561-562
 and Chao Chi 趙佶, Prince of Tuan,
 553-554
pao-chia 保甲 regulations of, 408
 principled stances of, 553
 on the State Trade Agency, 443-445
 and T'ang Chiung, 447
 and Ts'ao Ching 蔡京, 577
 Tseng Ti, 726-727, 741-742, 744
 Tseng Ts'ung-lung, 859
 Tsinghai 青海, 466
Tso tradition (*Tso-chuan*), 689
Tso-tsang feng-chuang k'u 左藏封樞庫. *See*
 Storehouse for the Reserves of
 the State Treasury
Tso-tsang nan-k'u 左藏南庫. *See* State
 Treasury, Southern Storehouse of
 the
 Tsou Hao 鄒浩 (1060-1111), 564,
 568
tsu-yung shih 租庸使. *See* Commissioner
 for State Revenue
tsu-yung-tiao 租庸調 (tax system), 134
ts'u'i chien-ping 墓兼并. *See* “engrossers”
 (*chien-ping*), smashing the

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1085

- Ts'ui Yin 崔胤, 47, 48
 Ts'ui Yü-chih 催與之 (1158–1239), 865,
 878
 Tsung-chen 宗貞 (Liao Hsing-tsung,
 r. 1031–55), 288. *See also* Liao
 Hsing-tsung (r. 1031–55)
Tsung-cheng ssu 宗正寺. *See* Court of the
 Imperial Clan
 Tsung-han, 640. *See also* Wan-yen
 Nien-han
Tsung-hsüeh 宗學. *See* Imperial Clan
 Academy
 Tsung Tse 宗澤 (1059–1128), 648,
 649–650, 663
 and the defense of the Central Plain,
 653
 Tsung-wan. *See* Wan-yen Wo-li-pu
 (Tsung-wan, d. 1127)
 Tsung-wang, Prince, 638, 640–641
 Ts'ung-jung 從榮, 81
 Tu, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*,
 901–61), 243, 259
tu-chien 都監. *See* commander, district
tu chien-cheng 都檢正. *See* examiner, chief
Tu-chib ssu 度支司. *See* Accounting Bureau
Tu-chib tu-chi 度支都籍. *See* Register of
 Public Revenue
 Tu Ch'ung (d. 1140), 650, 654,
 663
 Tu Ch'ung-wei 杜重威, 99, 100,
 101–102, 106, 107
 Tu Fan 杜範 (1181–1244), 859, 878,
 881, 882, 883, 902, 903
 Tu Hung 杜洪, 147
 Tu Kao 杜杲, 860
tu-pao 都保. *See* Superior Guard
tu-pu shu 都部署. *See* chief deployment
 commands
Tu shang-shui yuan 都商稅院. *See* Central
 Commercial Tax Bureau
tu-shih ying-t'ien shih. *See* commissioner
 of waterways and agriculture
tu-shui chien 都水監. *See* Directorate of
 waterways
 Tu-sung Pass 獨松關, 939
tu-ta t'i-chü ch'a-ma-ssu 都大提舉茶馬司.
See Superintendancy for Tea and
 Horses
tu-t'ang 都堂. *See* Council of State
 Tu-tsung 度宗 (Chao Ch'i 趙禥,
 1240–1274, r. 1264–74), 873,
 913, 916–917, 928. *See also*
 Chao Ch'i (Tu-tsung, 1240–74,
 r. 1264–74)
 extravagance of, 916
 and indiscriminate advancement of
 kinsmen, 916
 and Mongols, 917
Tu-tu 都督. *See* commander-in-chief
 Tu Yen 杜衍, 318, 321, 323
 and Shih Chieh 石介, 321
t'u-t'uan 土團. *See* militia, popular
 T'u-yü-hun 吐谷渾, 101
 Tuan, Prince of, 553. *See also* Chao Chi;
 Chao Chi (Hui-tsung,
 1282–1135, r. 1100–1126);
 Sung Hui-tsung
 Tuan-chou 端州, 332
 Tuan-li Gate 端禮門, 575
 Tuan-ming Academician 端明學士, 77
 Tuan Ning 段凝, 67
 Tuan-tsung 端宗 (Chao Shih 趙是,
 1268–78, r. 1276–78), 952. *See*
 also Chao Shih (Tuan-tsung, c.
 1268–78, r. 1276–78)
t'uan. *See* drill “teams”
t'uan chiao-fa 團教法. *See* team drill
 measure
tui-fa 隊法. *See* army, squad structure
t'un-t'ien 屢田. *See* military colony system
 Tung Ch'ang 董昌 (r. 895–96), 79,
 140–143, 164, 165
 Tung Chü-i, 828
 Tung Huai 董槐, 888–889, 892, 901,
 905
 Tung-ming Affair, 419
 Tung Sung-ch'en 董宋臣, 887, 888, 896,
 904, 905, 906, 925

- Tung-t'ing Lake 洞庭湖, 10, 134, 202
 Tung-t'ing rebels, 675–676
 Tung Wen-ping 董文炳, 940, 942, 949
 T'ung-an, 621, 622
 T'ung-chi Dike 通濟堰, 172
T'ung-chin yin-t'ai ssu 通進銀台司. *See*
 Memorial Forwarding Office
 T'ung-chou 同州, 55, 65
 T'ung-chou2 通州, 657, 868
 T'ung-ch'uan, 920
t'ung chung-shu men-hsia p'ing-chang-shih
 同中書門下平章事. *See*
 Secretariat-Chancellery, Chief
 Executive of the
 T'ung Kuan 童貫 (1054–1126), 27, 28,
 478, 570, 584, 603, 605,
 617–619, 620–622, 625, 626,
 628, 630, 632, 638, 639, 652
t'ung-p'an 通判. *See* controller-general;
 vice-prefect
T'ung-wen kuan 同文館. *See* Korean
 Relations Institute
 tutor. *See specific actor*
 Twitchett, Denis C., 187
 Two Administrations (*erb-fu*), 236, 462.
 See also liang-fu
 “two authorities” (*liang fu*), 368
 two-councilor system, 877
 councilor of the left, 877
 councilor of the right, 877
Tzu-chib t'ung-chien 資治通鑑. *See*
 *Comprehensive mirror to aid in
 government (Tzu-chib t'ung-chien,*
 1067–84)
Tzu-chib t'ung-chien ch'ang-pien chi-shib
 pen-mo 資治通鑑長編紀事本末,
 391, 558
Tzu-chib t'ung-chien kang-mu 資治通鑑綱目.
 *See Outline and details of the
 comprehensive mirror*
 Tzu-chou, 328, 329
 Tzu-kuei county 稕歸縣, 10
tz'u-shih 刺史. *See* prefect
Tz'u-yu chii 慈幼局. *See* Child Benevolence
 Service
 Uighur warlord state, 206, 354
 unification, partial, under T'ai-tsui,
 215–220
 “units of account” or “mixed accounting
 units,” 698
 Universal Charity Granaries (*kuang-hui*
 ts'ang), 396
 Upper Four Armies (*shang ssu-chiün*), 234
 uprising. *See* rebellion
 “use of the outside to govern the inside,”
 110
 “using barbarians to control barbarians”
 (*i-i chib-i*), 628
 vassal (*ch'en*), 354
 “venerables” (*yüan-lao*), 353
 Venus (*chin-hsing*), 844
 Veritable Records (*shih-lu*), 242, 244, 538,
 558, 691
 vessels, sacrificial, 608
 Vice-Commissioner for Military Affairs,
 115
 vice-prefect (*t'ung-p'an*), 287, 358
 Vietnam, 148, 170, 951. *See also* Annam
 villains, “outright” (*chien-jen*), 363
 virtue, 58, 117, 126, 130, 167, 168,
 362, 587, 785, 843
 clergy of (*te-shih*), 613
 Confucian, 117, 720
 vouchers, exchange (*chiao-yin*), 284
 “vulgar opportunist” (*liu-si chiao-hsing*
 chib jen), 360
 Wa-ch'iao Pass 瓦橋關, 60, 129, 249
 Wade-Giles system, xi
 Wan-chou 萬州, 954
 Wan-sheng chiün 萬勝軍. *See* Ever
 Victorious Army
 Wan-sui shan 萬歲山. *See* Myriad Years
 Mountain

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1087

- Wan-yen A-ku-ta (Ch'in T'ai-tsu, r. 1115–23), 16, 628, 629–632, 633. *See also* Chin Shih-tsung (r. 1161–89); Chin T'ai-tsung (r. 1123–35); Wu-chi-mai; Wu-lu
- Wan-yen A-lu-tai 完顏阿魯岱, 792
- Wan-yen Chang 完顏璋, 738
- Wan-yen K'uang 完顏匡, 795
- Wan-yen Liang 完顏亮 (Prince Hai-ling 海陵王, r. 1149–61), 704, 713. *See also* Hai-ling, Prince
- Wan-yen Nien-han. *See* Tsung-han; Wan-yen Tsung-han
- Wan-yen Ta-lan 完顏達顰, 657, 673, 675, 677, 682
- Wan-yen Tsung-han (1079–1136), 636, 640, 642, 644. *See also* Wan-yen Nien-han
- Wan-yen Tsung-wang, 636, 642
- Wan-yen Wang-hsi 完顏王喜, 800
- Wan-yen Wo-li-pu 完顏斡離不 (Tsung-wan, d. 1127), 644, 648
- Wan-yen Wu-chi-mai. *See* Chin T'ai-tsung (r. 1123–35)
- Wan-yen Wu-chu 完顏兀朮 (d. 1148), 654–655, 660, 677, 686
- Wan-yen Wu-lu 完顏烏魯 (Emperor Chin Shih-tsung 金世宗, r. 1161–89), 706. *See also* Chin Shih-tsung (r. 1161–89)
- wang 王. *See* king, nation (*kuo wang*)
- Wang, Consort, 78
- Wang An-kuo 王安國, 448
- Wang An-li 王安禮, 452, 477
- Wang An-shih 王安石 (1021–86, r. 1069–76), 205, 356, 693. *See also* Wang Ching-kung and civil service examinations, 364 and consolidation of executive power, economic reform under, 383–447 economic thought of, 384–392 and Empress Kao 高后, 338
- foreign policy under, 464–469 and Hsing Shu 邢恕, 479 and military reform, 27–28 “Myriad Word Memorial” of, 24–25, 350 negative outcomes of policies of, 439–447 and the New Policies, 327, 544 *pao-chia* 保甲 regulations of, 408–412 and pre-harvest loans, 351 and quest for ideological uniformity, 364 second term as chief minister, 452–454 and Shen-tsung, 357–396, 463 and the state education system, 585–586 and state trade policies, 406–407 tactics of, 30
- Wang Chang 王章, 110
- Wang Ch'ang 王昶, 168
- Wang Chao-yüan 王昭遠, 226
- Wang Ch'ao 王潮, 151–152, 159–160
- Wang Chen. *See* Tsei Wang Pa
- Wang Ch'eng-yen (951–1003), 217
- Wang Chi 王摺 (d. 1243), 856, 863, 867
- Wang Chi-chung 王繼忠 (?–1023), 263, 266, 267, 268
- Wang Chi-chung2 王稽中, 732
- Wang Chi-hsien 王繼先 (1098–1181), 690, 703, 707
- Wang Chien 王建, 43, 48, 50, 53, 54, 55, 134–135, 155–157, 158–159, 161–162, 164, 188–189, 195
- Wang Chien2 王堅 (d. 1259), 870
- Wang Chi-en 王繼恩 (?–999), 257, 260–261
- Wang Chih 王質, 298
- Wang Ch'in-jo 王欽若 (962–1025), 270, 272, 274–277, 282
- Wang Ching-kung 王荊公. *See* Wang An-shih

1088

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Wang Chu 王洙, and the imperial libraries, 294
- Wang Ch'u-chih 王處直, 59, 60
- Wang Ch'u-ts'un 王處存, 44
- Wang Chung-cheng 王中正, 473–475
- Wang Chung-i 王仲翼, 690
- Wang Chung-shan 王仲山, 690
- Wang Chü-an 王居安, 831
- Wang Chün 王峻, 115
- Wang Fu (1079–1126), 584, 625, 626, 638
- Wang Fu-chih 王夫之 (1619–92), 754, 755
- Wang Gungwu, 215
- Wang Hou 王厚, 617–619, 620
- Wang Hsi 王喜, 803–804
- Wang Hsiao-po 王小波 (?–993), 257
- Wang Hsien-chih 王仙芝, 138
- Wang Hsü 王緒, 151
- Wang Huai 王淮 (1127–90), 740, 746
- Wang Huan 王環, 196
- Wang Huan2, 690
- Wang Hui 王晦, 690
- Wang I 王益 (993–1039), 358
- Wang I-yung 王貽永, 307, 323
- Wang Jung 王鎔, 44, 59
- Wang Kuang-lien 王廣廉, 395
- Wang Kuei 王桂 (1019–85), 339, 457, 463, 472, 478, 480, 481, 485, 672
- and Su Hsün 蘇洵, 345
- and Ts'ai Ch'üeh 蔡確, 485
- and Ying-tsung, 341–342
- Wang Kung-ch'en 王拱辰, 323
- on compulsory drill, 445
- and prefecture schools, 318
- Wang-lai kuo-hsin so* 往來國信所. *See* Office of Diplomatic Correspondence
- Wang Lao-chih, 611
- Wang Lin 王蘓, 754
- Wang Ling-mou 王令謀, 161
- Wang Lu 王麟, 137
- Wang Lun 王倫 (1084–1144), 673, 677, 679, 682, 690, 811
- Wang Mang 王莽 (r. 9–23), 297, 894
- Wang Nan (1158–1213), 811, 812
- Wang P'ang 王雱, 451, 453–454
- Wang Pien 王抃 (d. 1184), 739, 743, 744, 763, 765
- Wang Ping, 636, 640
- Wang Po-wen, 300, 649
- Wang P'u 王朴 (?–957), 122, 123–124, 209
- Wang Shao 王韶, 404, 466–468
- Wang Shen-ch'i 王審琦 (r. 909–25), 217
- Wang Shen-chih 王審知, 151–152, 158, 168, 184, 196
- Wang Shen-kuei 王審邽, 151–152
- Wang Shu 王曙, 286, 292
- and prefecture schools, 318
- Wang Shu2 王庶, 670, 677, 679, 680
- Wang Su 王素, 321
- Wang Sui 王隨, 290, 298, 299–300
- Wang Sui2 王遂, 880
- Wang Ta-chieh 王大節, 799, 806
- Wang Tan 王旦 (957–1017), 271, 272, 275–277
- Wang Tao, 373
- Wang T'ao 王陶 (1020–80), 357
- Wang Te (1087–1154), 676
- Wang Te-yung 王德用, 290, 311
- Wang Ti, banishment of, 543
- Wang Tsao 汪藻 (1079–1154), 669–670
- Wang Tse 王則, rebellion, 325
- Wang Tseng 王曾 (978–1038), 277, 280, 281, 282, 283, 285, 286–287, 288, 298
- Wang Ts'un, 507, 524–525
- Wang Tsung 王叡, 300, 307
- Wang Tsung-chieh 王宗傑, 164
- Wang Tsung-k'an, 159
- Wang Tsung-lu, 164
- Wang Tsung-pi 王宗弼, 71, 159
- Wang Tu 王都, 79
- Wang Tzu-hsi, 611
- Wang Wan 王萬, 880

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1089

- Wang Wen-ch'ing (1093–1153), 613
- Wang Yao-ch'en 王堯臣, 308, 319
and the imperial libraries, 294
- Wang Yeh 王塗, 880
- Wang Yen 王衍 (r. 918–25), 71,
163–164
- Wang Yen2 王彥 (1090–1139), 650,
660, 663
- Wang Yen-chang 王彥章, 66
- Wang Yen-cheng 王延政 (r. 943–45),
168–169
- Wang Yen-chün 王延鉤 (r. 927–35),
183
- Wang Yen-hsi 王延羲 (r. 939–44), 168
- Wang Yen-pin, 184
- Wang Yen-sou 王巖叟 (1043–93), 436,
440, 491, 492, 495, 502, 510,
515, 523, 525
and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung,
542
and Chang Shun-min 張舜民,
517–518
and Chang Tun 章惇, 493
on compulsory drill, 445
on drafted service, 503
and “engrossers,” 442
and Fan Ch'un-jen 范純仁, 505
and the hired service exemption, 500
on *pao-chia* 保甲, 446
stripped of prestige titles, 541
and Su Shih 蘇軾, 515
and Teng Wen-po, 527
- Wang-yen Wu-chu, 682
- Wang Yin 王殷, 111, 114
- Wang Ying 王郢, 140
- Wang Ying-lin 王應麟 (1223–96), 923,
924, 935, 936, 940
- Wang Yüan 王淵, 651
- Wang Yüan-yung 王元膺, 164
- Wang Yüeh 王爚 (d. 1277), 923, 931,
934, 935, 936
war. *See specific conflict.* *See also* rebellions
arts of (*wu*), 556
games, 141, 144–146
- Warding off the Sea Catchment Basin
(*Han-hai t'ang*), 173
- warfare, mounted, 306, 315
- Warring States period (476–221 BCE),
134
- water
conservancy networks. *See* irrigation
control, 10, 326. *See also* irrigation
sellers (*t'i p'ing-che*), 430
- Water Margin, The* (*Shui-hu chuan*), 626
- waterways, 20, 126, 128, 129, 130, 222
- “way of softness” (*jou-tao, huai-jou*), 354,
466, 689, 690
- “Weak first, strong later” strategy,
220–229
- wealth, 388–392
financing armies with private, 85
“managing,” 381
public (*kung*) and private (*ssu*), 276
- weapon. *See specific weapon type*
- weather. *See portents*
- Wei, Prince (Wei Chao Wang,
r. 1208–13), 818, 819
- Wei, Princess of, 293
- Wei Chi-tsung 魏繼宗, 405–406, 443,
450
- Wei Ch'i 魏杞, 719
- Wei Chou, 153–154
- Wei-chou 魏州, 44, 51, 62, 66, 72–73,
106–107
mutiny of Imperial Guard units at,
85, 87
- Wei-chou2 衛州, 63
rebellion at, 91
- Wei-chou3 維州. *See* Wei-chou6
- Wei-chou4 渭州, 308, 312, 314
- Wei-chou5 濰州, 824
- Wei-chou6 威州, 886
- Wei Chuang 章莊, 161–162
- Wei Han-chin 魏漢津, 608
- Wei Jen-p'u 魏仁浦, 122
- Wei Kuei-fei, 678
- Wei Liao-weng 魏了翁, 816–817, 828,
854, 876, 877, 901

- Wei-ming A-mai, 551
- Wei-ming Ping-ch'ang 嵬名秉常
(Emperor Hsia Hui-tsung,
r. 1068–86), 506. *See also* Hsia
Hui-tsung (r. 1068–86)
- Wei-ming Shan, 354
- Wei-Po, 44, 46, 51, 53, 57, 62, 72
- Wei River 潼水, 4, 47, 302
- Wei T'ai 魏泰 (c. 1050–1110), 377,
451
- wei-t'ing* 假庭. *See* outlaw court
- welfare, state, 596–600
- wen* 文. *See* culture, refinements of
- Wen, King of Chou (r. 11C. BCE), 59
- Wen-ch'eng huang-hou (Empress Lady Chang), 335
- Wen Chi-fu 文及甫, 456
and alleged plot to depose Che-tsung,
542
- Wen-chou 溫州, 140, 947
- Wen-chou2 文州, 864
- Wen-hsüan 文選. *See* Anthology of literature
- Wen-sheng chiin. *See* Ever Victorious Army
- Wen-ti (r. 180–57 BCE), 689
- Wen T'ien-hsiang 文天祥 (1236–83),
925, 926, 934, 938, 939, 941,
946, 947, 948, 949, 951, 952,
955, 957, 961
- Wen Yen-po 文彥博 (1006–97), 339,
344, 353, 373, 378, 491, 500,
517, 519, 524, 525, 542
criticized for Hsi Hsia
accommodation, 537
- Wen-yüan ying-hua 文苑英華. *See* Finest
blossoms from the garden of elegant
writing
- Western Capital, 52
- Western Wall Bureau (*Hsi-ch'eng so*),
591
- widow. *See specific actor*
- wife. *See specific actor*
- wine, 327
-mash franchises (*fang-ch'ang*), 398
monopoly, 400, 907
- wineries, 443
- women, palace, 293, 305, 335, 764,
772, 944
- wonder-worker. *See* occult master
(*fang-shih*)
- Worthy, Edmund H., Jr., 11
- Wright, Hope, xi
- Wu, 5, 178, 195–197
King of (*Wu wang*), 157
- Wu, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*,
1115–97), 31, 757, 762–763,
764, 768, 771, 772, 773, 786,
787, 809, 875
- Wu, Princess, 835
- Wu An-ch'ih 吳安持, 456
- Wu An-shih, 523
- Wu Ch'eng, 162
- Wu-ch'i-mai 吳乞買 (Chin T'ai-tsung,
1075–1135, r. 1123–), 633–634.
See also Chin T'ai-tsung
(r. 1123–35)
- Wu Chieh 吳玠 (1093–1139), 660, 797
- Wu Chien 吳堅 (1093–1139), 763, 887,
941
- Wu Ch'ien 吳潛, 859, 886–887, 890,
904, 905, 915
- Wu-ching tsung-yao 武經總要. *See* Essentials
of the military classics
- Wu-chou 武州, 87
- Wu-chou2 梧州, 332
- Wu-chou3 武州, 634
- Wu-chou4 豐州, 947, 949
- Wu Ch'u-hou 吳處厚, 522
- Wu Ch'ung 吳充, 373, 454, 456–457,
472, 479
- Wu Chü 吳琚, 762
- wu-fu*. *See* five circles of mourning
- Wu-han 武漢. *See* Han-yang
- Wu Hsi 吳曦 (d. 1207), 791, 797, 801,
802, 811, 933, 939
beheaded, 802
- Wu Hsien 武興 (d. 1234), 856
- Wu-hsing 吳興. *See* An-chi 安吉
- Wu-hsüeh 武學. *See* Military Academy

- Wu-hu 蕪湖, 933
- Wu I 吳益 (1124-71), 762
- Wu-i Mountains, 10
- Wu Kai (1125-66), 762
- Wu kingdom (902-37), 134, 143-147, 160-161
- Wu Kuang 吳廣, 743
- Wu K'uei 吳奎 (1010-67), 337, 357
- Wu-kuo ku-shih* 五國故事, 176, 184
- wu-lai*, 141
- Wu Lin 吳麟 (1102-67), 660, 669, 713, 732, 763, 797, 799
- Wu-lu. *See* Chin Shih-tsung 金世宗 (r. 1161-89); Wan-yen
- Wu Min, 640
- Wu-tai shih pu* 五代史補 (Supplement to the *History of the Five Dynasties*), 182
- Wu T'ing 吳挺 (d. 1193), 797, 798, 801
- Wu Tse-t'ien 武則天, Empress (r. 690-705), 286, 289, 522
- Wu wang* 吳王. *See* Wu, king of
- Wu-wei, 933
- Wu-yen-ch'eng 烏延城, 476
- Wu Yung 吳泳, 858
- Wu-yü 兀欲 (Yüan, Liao Shih-tsung, 947-51), 105, 106, 113. *See also* Liao Shih-tsung (r. 947-51)
- Wu-Yüeh 吳越, 109, 133, 163, 195. *See also* Wu-Yüeh wang
- army, 200
- and Fu-chou 福州, 194
- importance of ceramics to, 177
- as an independent state, 5
- and K'ai-Feng 開封, 220
- King of (*Wu Yüeh wang*), 157
- and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 124
- and the Later Chou 後周, 127
- and Li Jen-ta, 169
- and Southern T'ang 南唐, 227
- state formation in, 140-143
- and the Sung 宋, 204, 248
- and T'ai-tsui, 14, 227
- and trade with the north, 179, 180-181
- and the traditional elite, 160
- and the Wang family, 10
- and Wang Shen-chih 王審知, 197
- water control in, 173-174
- and Wu, 195
- ya-chiang* 牙將. *See* militia leader
- ya-ch'ien* 衙前. *See* supply master
- ya-chiün* 牙軍. *See* army, regional troops
- Yai-shan (Cliff Hill), 952-953, 955-958
- yamen* police for the arrest of thieves (*kung-shou*), 398
- yang*, 761
- Yang, Consort (1244-79), 809, 929, 948, 949, 952, 956, 958
- Yang, Dowager Consort (*huang t'ai-fei*), 289
- Yang, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*), 289
- Yang₂, Dowager Empress (*huang t'ai-hou*), 875, 930. *See also* Yang₂, Empress; Yang Mei-tzu
- Yang₂, Empress (Yang Mei-tzu, 1162-1232), 809-810, 813, 834, 835, 836. *See also* Yang₂, Dowager Empress; Yang Mei-tzu
- Yang, Lady, 292, 293, 294
- Yang, Prince of, 335
- Yang, Pure Consort (Yang Shu-fei, 984-1036), 279, 280, 291
- Yang An-erh 陽安兒 (Yang An-kuo 陽安國, d. 1214), 824-825. *See also* Yang An-kuo
- Yang An-kuo 陽安國. *See* Yang An-erh (Yang An-kuo, d. 1214)
- Yang Chen 楊鎮, 946
- yang-ch'i* 陽氣 (propagating essence), 364
- Yang Ch'i-chung 楊沂中 (1102-66), 666, 676, 682
- Yang Chien 楊簡 (1140-1226), 781, 788, 814, 815, 897

- Yang Chien² 楊顥, 591
 Yang-chou 楊州, 126, 144, 145, 146,
 165, 177, 178, 850, 937, 938,
 949. *See also* Kuang-chou;
 Kuang-ling
 Yang Chung-liang 楊仲良, 558
 Yang Ch'ung-hsün 楊崇勳, 292
 Yang Ch'ung-pen 楊崇本, 50
 Yang Fu-kuang 楊復光, 157, 158
 Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密 (d. 905), 163,
 165, 188
 background of, 144–147
 and Chao K'uang-ning 趙匡凝, 50
 and Ch'ien Liu 錢鏐, 142
 and Chu Wen 朱溫, 48, 53
 in Huai-nan, 43, 178
 and Huang Ch'ao 黃巢, 134, 135
 as King of Wu, 157
 and the Wu state, 160
 and Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 143
 Yang Hui 楊繪, 382, 419, 420
 on hired-service, 437
 Yang I-feng 楊沂豐, 162
 Yang Kuang-yüan 楊光遠, 88, 91, 98, 99
 Yang Kuei-fei 楊貴妃, 874
 Yang-lien Chen-chia 楊璉真加, 959–960,
 961
 Yang-liu 楊劉, 66
 Yang Lung-yen 楊隆演 (r. 908–18), 166,
 188, 194, 196
 Yang Mei-tzu 楊妹子. *See* Yang²,
 Empress (Yang Mei-tzu,
 1162–1232)
 Yang Meng, 166
 Yang Miao-chen 楊妙真, 824, 849, 896
 Yang Pin 楊邠, 108, 110
 Yang P'u 楊溥 (r. 921–37), 163, 166,
 167, 189
 Yang Shih (1053–1135), 434
 Yang Shih-hou 楊師厚, 54, 62
 Yang Shu-fei. *See* Yang, Pure Consort
 (Yang Shu-fei, 984–1036)
 Yang T'ien 楊畋, 332
 Yang Tz'u-shan 楊次山 (1139–1219),
 764, 810, 811, 817
 Yang Wan-li 楊萬里 (1127–1206), 746,
 756
 Yang Wei, 533
 Yang Wen-chung 楊文仲, 944
 Yang Wo 楊渥 (r. 905–8), 188
 Yang Yao, 665, 674
 Yang Yeh 楊業 (?–986), 250
 Yangtze Delta, 5
 Yangtze River 長江揚子江, 10, 195–196,
 928, 937, 954
 and battle of Ts'ai-shih, 706
 and Chu Wen 朱溫, 48
 east-west trade along the, 183
 independent governors along the, 5
 and Kuo Jung 郭榮, 124
 and the Later Chou 後周, 4
 lower, 28
 Mongols along the, 33
 north-south trade along the, 222
 population movement along the, 134
 resources along the, 225
 rice cultivation along the, 172
 warlords along the, 29
 and Yang Hsing-mi 楊行密, 43
 Yao, King, 709
 Yao² 獠人 (the Yao people), 329
 Yao Ch'ung 姚翀 (d. 1227), 849
 Yao chü 藥局. *See* Medical Service (*Yao chü*)
 Yao P'ing-chung (1099–?), 638, 645,
 648
 Yeh Ch'ing-ch'en 葉清臣, 299
 Yeh-lü Ch'ün, 630
 Yeh-lü Hsieh-chen 耶律斜軫 (?–999),
 249
 Yeh-lü Hsiu-ko 耶律休哥 (953–1009),
 249, 262
 Yeh-lü Jen-hsien 耶律仁先, 311
 Yeh Shih 葉適 (1150–1223), 770, 788,
 790, 794, 814, 899, 911
 Yeh Wei-tao 葉味道, 844
 Yellow Emperor, 608

GLOSSARY-INDEX

1093

- Yellow River, 38, 60, 61, 222, 641. *See also* Huang-ho
 dominated by Ho-tung, 42–43
 in early tenth century China, 4
 and the Greater Shan-hsi circuit, 23
 during Later Liang–Ho-tung conflict, 64–65
 and Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗, 62
 neglected dikes on the, 283
 and Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 94
 after the Treaty of Shan-yüan 潊淵, 21
Yellow River chart (Ho-t'u), 270
yen 垣. *See* dikes (*yen*). *See also* specific municipality or waterway
 Yen, Consort (d. 1260), 874, 888, 913, 930
 Yen, Prince of, 59
 Yen-an fu 延安府, 306, 312. *See also* Yen-chou
yen-ch'ao 鹽鈔. *See* salt certificates (*yen-ch'ao*)
 Yen-ching 燕京, 630, 632
 Yen-chou 奕州, 114
 Yen-chou2 延州, 475. *See also* Yen-an fu
 Yen-chou3 鹽州, 549
 Yen-chou4 嚴州. *See* Mu-chou
 Yen-ch'uan garrison, 800
Yen-fu kung 延福宮. *See* Palace of Extended Blessings
yen-lu. *See* remonstrance, “roads of”
 Yen Shih 嚴實, 830
 Yen Shu 晏殊, 282, 287, 290, 307, 313, 318
 and Shih Chieh 石介, 321
 Yen Tun-fu 晏敦復, 681
 Yen Wen-ying 閻文應, 292, 293, 294, 296
 Yen-Yün region, 14, 20, 28, 263, 267, 634
yin 陰, 761
yin2 蔭. *See* privilege, hereditary
 Yin-chou 銀州, 619
 Yin Fan-cheng, 202
yin-hsiün mo-su chib-pi 因循末俗之弊. *See also* conventionality, slavish
 Yin Shu
 and the Ch'ing-li reforms (1043–45), 321
 and Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹, 298
Yin-t'ai ssu 銀臺司. *See* Office of Transmission
 Ying-chou 濟州, 4, 87, 209, 251, 266
 Ying-chou2 應州, 87
 Ying-chou3 鄢州, 180, 928
 Ying-chou6 蒼州, 629, 634
 Ying Ch'un-chih 應純之, 825
 Ying-kuo-kung. *See* Chao Hsien (1271–1323)
ying-t'ien 耘田. *See* military-agricultural outposts
 Ying-t'ien, 858
 Ying-t'ien-fu 應天府, 438, 637, 643
 Ying-tsung 英宗 (Chao Shu 趙曙, 1032–67, r. 1063–67), 22, 323, 324, 342, 347
 fiscal problems during the reign of, 344–345
Ying-tsung shib-lu 英宗實錄. *See* Ying-tsung veritable record
Ying-tsung veritable record (Ying-tsung shib-lu) 英宗實錄, 339
 Ying Yao 應, 885, 898, 904
 “younger uncle and nephew” (*shu-chib*) relationship, 719. *See also* adoption
 Yu-chou 幽州, 551
 Chou Te-wei 周德威 in, 61–62, 64
 consequences of the conquest of, 62
 defensive measures in, 81
 independent governors of, 43, 44
 Liu Jen-kung 劉仁恭 in, 47, 48, 51
 Liu Shou-kuang 劉守光 in, 59, 60
 neutralized by ChuWen, 55
 and Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 87
 as Southern Liao capital, 209

1094

GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Yu-chou 幽州 (*cont.*)
 T'ai-tsung's campaign against, 248
 T'ai-tsung's defeat near, 14
 Yu-chou2 蕪州, 251
 Yu Ssu 游似, 884
 Yung, Prince of, 335
 Yung-chia School, 788
 Yung-chou2 嵩州, 329–331, 940
 Yung-hsing-chün, 23, 393, 551
 Yung-lo ch'eng 永樂城, 464, 476–477,
 489, 506, 549, 616
 Yung-lo 永樂 era (Everlasting Joy,
 1120–23), 624
Yung-lo ta-tien 永樂大典. *See* *Encyclopedia*
 of the Yung-lo era (Yung-lo ta-tien,
 1408)
 Yung-p'ing, 307
 Yü, Consort, 929, 952
 Yü, Lady, 335
 Yü Chieh 余玠 (d. 1253), 868, 870
yü-ch'i'en chuang-kuan chi-shang k'u
 御前椿管激賞庫. *See* Imperial
 Treasury of Awards
 Yü Ching 余靖, 332, 333
 and Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹, 298
 and Jen-tsung, 299
 and Shih Chieh 石介, 321
 Yü-ching chien 清井監, 329
 Yü-ch'ing chao-ying Palace 玉清昭應宮,
 286
 Yü-chou 蕴州, 81, 87
yü-hou. *See* defendants
 Yü Hsien-ch'ing, 284
 Yü-k'ou Pass 漢口關, 129
 Yü-lin 榆林, 470
yü-pi 御筆. *See* decrees, imperial
yü-shih. *See* censors
yü-shih chung-ch'eng 御史中丞. *See* vice
 censor-in-chief
yü-shih ta-fu 御史大夫. *See* Censor-in-chief
Yü-shih t'ai 御史臺. *See* Censorate; Census
 Bureau
 Yü T'ien-hsi 余天錫, 836, 880
- Yü Tuan-li (1135–1201), 781, 782
 Yü-wen Hsü-chung, 636
 Yü-yao 餘姚, 177
yü-ying shih 御營使. *See* Commissioner of
 Imperial Encampment
 Yü Yün-wen 虞允文 (1110–74), 724,
 728, 732, 735, 736–737,
 739
 and battle of Ts'ai-shih, 706
 departure with honors of, 736
 diverting revenues, 750
 at Ts'ai-shih, 706
Yüan dynastic history (*Yüan shih*), 920
 Yüan-feng 元豐 era (1078–85), 455
 administrative reforms, 457–464
Yüan-feng k'u 元豐庫. *See* Yüan-feng
 Treasury
 Yüan-feng 元豐 Treasury (*Yüan-feng k'u*),
 418
 Yüan Hsieh 袁燮 (1144–1224), 777,
 788, 814, 815, 817, 820, 898
 Yüan River 沔江, 10
 Yüan state, 36
 Yüan Yen 袁彥 (907–73), 214, 215,
 498
 Yüan-yu 元祐
 partisans (*Yüan-yu tang* 元祐黨), 25,
 572, 573, 578. *See also*
 Restoration reign (1086–94)
 party, proscription of all members of
 (1102–04), 26
 Yüan-yu 元祐, Dowager Empress (*huang*
 t'ai-hou, 1077–1135), 647, 650,
 651, 653, 662. *See also* Lung-yu,
 Dowager Empress (*huang*
 t'ai-hou)
 and Kao-tsung's heir apparent,
 Yüan-yu 元祐 era (1086–93)
 factionalism during, 509–514
 Li Ch'ing-ch'en's indictment of, 534
 Yüeh, King of (*Yüeh wang*) 越王, 143,
 157
 Yüeh-chou 越州, 654. *See also* Shao-hsing

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-81248-1 - The Cambridge History of China, Volume 5 Part One: The Sung Dynasty
and its Precursors, 907-1279

Edited by Denis Twitchett and Paul Jakov Smith

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

1095

Yüeh Fei 岳飛 (1103–41), 29, 30, 644,
649, 654, 655, 659, 666, 669,
674, 675, 677, 679, 682, 793
and Chao Po-ts'ung 趙伯蹠, 708
execution of, 684–686

posthumous rehabilitation of, 703,
714
Yüeh wang 越王. *See* Yüeh, King of
Yün-chou 雲州, 50, 66
Yün-chou2 雲州 (Ta-t'ung), 81, 87, 90